

Extreme

ENGLISH

for

Preparatory Program

telegram:@bluenileacademy

Communicative Speaking

Grammar and Usage

Communicative Writing

*The Easiest Way to Learn Effective
English Language for Grade 11-12*

EUEE 1995 - 2011 E.C

2015 E.C

Extreme
Series

Takele Legesse (M.A)

Table of content

PART I: GRAMMAR**Unit one: COLLOCATIONS**

1.1	Collocations and other expressions	1
1.2	Collocation with (have, do, make, take, break, catch pay, save, keep, come, go, get)	2
1.3	Collocation related to "time"	3
1.4	Collocations related to "business" English	4
1.5	Types of collocations	4
1.6	Sample Collocations	4
1.7	Compounds and idioms	5
	➤ Post tests	6
1.8	As and like	8
1.9	As if and As though	12
1.10	If and When	19
1.11	In case and if	21
1.12	Whether and if	23
1.13	Make, let and allow	26
1.14	Make and do	27
	➤ Review Exercises	29
	➤ Answer key	31

Unit two: CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

2.1	First Conditional	33
2.2	Second Conditional	40
2.3	Third Conditional	47
2.4	Inversion in type 2 and type 3 conditional	52
2.5	Implied Conditionals	53
2.6	Conjunctions that can sometimes be used in place of 'IF'	54
2.7	The main differences between type 1, 2 and type 3 Conditionals	55
2.8	Expressing 'Regret' and 'Wish'	56

Unit three: DEGREES OF COMPARISON	64
3.1 Positive Degree (no comparison)	64
3.2 Comparative Degree	71
3.3 Superlative Degree	88
➤ Review Exercises	94
➤ Answer key	96
Unit four: PHRASAL VERBS and IDOMS	97
4.1 Introduction	97
4.2 Basic Rules for Using Phrasal Verbs	98
4.3 English Idioms and Fixed Expressions	108
4.4 Similes: (as....as and Like)	109
4.5 Binomials	111
4.6 Idioms Describing People	112
4.7 Idioms Describing Feeling or Mood	113
4.8 Idioms Connected With Problematic Situations	114
4.9 Idioms Connected with Praise and Criticism	116
4.10 Idioms Connected with Using Language	117
➤ Exercises	134
➤ Answer key	139
Unit five: DISCOURSE MARKERS	140
5.1 Markers of Clause of Contrast	140
5.2 Markers of Clause of Purpose	152
5.3 Markers of Clause of Reason	159
5.4 Markers of clauses of Result	169
5.5 Markers of Clauses of Time	180
5.6 Markers of Clauses of Place	182
5.7 Markers of Choice/Alternative	185
5.8 Markers of Additive	190
5.9 Markers of illustration	194

Unit Six: RELATIVE CLAUSE	199
6.1 Introduction	199
6.2 Defining/Identifying Relative Clause	199
6.3 Non-Defining Relative Clause	204
6.4 Summary of relative clause	208
➤ Exercises	212
➤ Answer key	214
Unit Seven: MODAL AUXILIARIES	215
7.1 Modals Expressing 'Ability' (can, could, be able to)	215
7.2 Modals Expressing 'permission'	222
7.3 Modals Expressing "Possibility"	227
7.4 Modals Expressing 'Deduction'	233
7.5 Modals expressing "Advice / Necessity"	237
Unit Eight: ACTIVE and PASSIVE PATTERN	250
8.1 Basic Rules	250
8.2 Omission of the subject: 'passive'	251
8.3 Transitive verb: Two objects	251
8.4 Preposition with Passive	252
8.5 Imperative with passive	252
8.6 'Let' in passive	253
8.7 Infinitive with passive pattern	253
8.8 It is / It was time + for + obj + passive form	253
8.9 'That'-clause with passive	254
8.10 Object complement in passive	254
8.11 Interrogative sentence with passive	254
8.12 Other prepositions with passive (without 'by')	255
8.13 Verbs like "taste, smell, feel"	256
8.14 Passive with "-ing" forms (being seen)	256
8.15 'Get' instead of 'be' (is, am, was, are ---)	256
8.16 "Have" something "done"	257

8.17	Be supposed to do.....	257
	➤ Review Exercises.....	266
	➤ Answer key.....	270

Unit Nine: PARTICIPLES

9.1	Adjective Participle.....	272
9.2	Present Participle.....	272
9.3	Present participle phrase.....	279
9.4	The perfect participle (active).....	281
9.5	The past participle (passive) and the perfect participle (passive).....	282
	➤ Review Exercise.....	283
	➤ Answer key.....	287

Unit Ten: QUANTIFIERS

10.1	Introduction.....	291
10.2	Quantifiers' Table.....	291
10.3	Indefinite and Incomplete Quantifiers.....	292
10.4	Much, Many, a lot of, Plenty of.....	295
10.5	Few/ a few, little/ a little.....	296
10.6	Distributive Quantifiers.....	299
10.7	Comparative /Graded Quantifiers.....	302
10.8	Quantifiers of Difference.....	304
10.9	Compounds Formed with : (Some, any and no).....	305
	➤ Exercise.....	311
	➤ Answer key.....	314

Unit Eleven: TENSES

11.1	Simple present /Present Tense.....	315
11.2	Simple Past Tense.....	316
11.3	Simple Future.....	317
11.4	Present Progressive Tense.....	320
11.5	Past Progressive Tense.....	328
11.6	Future Continuous Tense.....	332
11.7	Present Perfect Tense.....	333

11.8	Present Perfect Tense.....	341
11.9	Past Perfect Tense.....	342
11.10	Past Perfect Progressive.....	344
11.11	Future Perfect Tense.....	345
11.12	Future Progressive Tense.....	346
	➤ Exercise.....	350
	➤ Answer key.....	353

Unit Twelve: DIRECT AND REPORTED SPEECH

12.1	Direct speech.....	354
12.2	Reported /Indirect speech.....	354
12.3	Changes in reported speech.....	357
12.4	Present situations (with reported speech).....	359
12.5	Reported questions.....	365
12.6	Infinitives in reported speech.....	366
12.7	Indirect speech in (special cases).....	369
	Review Exercise.....	370
	Answer key.....	373

Unit thirteen: INFINITIVES AND GERUNDS

13.1	Infinitive with and without 'to'.....	378
13.2	Verb + to- infinitive or - ing form.....	379
13.3	Preposition + ing form.....	386
13.4	The '-ing' form after 'to' as a preposition (to +ing).....	395
13.5	The -ing forms as subject, object, etc.....	396
13.6	Adjective +infinitive or -ing form (pleased to see).....	398
13.7	Noun +to-infinitive or -'ing' form.....	398
13.8	For-----to (It's time for the postman to come.).....	399
13.9	Before, after, since, by and for +ing.....	400
13.10	Summary of GERUND (ing forms).....	401

Unit Fourteen: PREPOSITIONS

14.1	Prepositions of time.....	412
14.2	Prepositions of place and movement.....	412
14.3	Some preposition choices.....	415

14.4	Verb with prepositions (look at her)	422
14.5	Nouns with preposition	425
14.6	Adjectives with prepositions (full of water)	428
14.7	Expressions beginning with prepositions	430
	➤ Review Exercises	435
	➤ Answer key	438

Unit Fifteen: ADJECTIVE AND ADVERBS

15.1	Adjectives, adverbs of manner	440
15.2	Adjective without nouns	440
15.3	Extreme Adjectives	443
15.4	Order of Adjectives	443
15.5	Adverbs with the verb	447
15.6	'Even and Only': end -position adverbs	450
15.7	Confusing adjectives and adverbs: fast, hard, late	450
15.8	Here, there (adverbs of place)	451
15.9	Hardly, scarcely, barely (adverbs of degree)	452
15.10	Fairly, quite, rather (adv. of degree)	453
15.11	Never, ever (adv. of frequency)	453
	➤ Review Exercise	459
	➤ Answer key	463

Part II: COMMUNICATIVE SPEAKING

Unit Sixteen: CONVERSATION / DIALOGUES

16.1	Meeting: Talking to people	464
16.2	Parting/ departure	465
16.3	Introducing others	467
16.4	Telephone Conversations (Telephoning)	469
16.5	Telling the Time	469
16.6	Invitation	473
16.7	Making invitation	477
16.8	Offering help	482
16.9	Asking for and Showing/Giving Direction	484
16.10	Making Request and Asking for Permission	486

16.11	Shopping	490
16.12	Expressing Preferences	496
16.13	Expressing Agreement and disagreement	498
16.14	Expressing Opinion	499
16.15	Thanks	500
16.16	Asking for clarification	502
16.17	Expressing sympathy	503
16.18	Expressing disappointment	503
16.19	Congratulations	503
16.20	Apologizing	504
16.21	Expressing surprises	504
16.22	Ways to encouraging someone	505
16.23	Expressing complaint	506
16.24	Ways to Talk About Price	506
16.25	Talking about compliments	506
16.26	Expressing certainty and probability	507
16.27	How to cheer up someone	507
16.28	Dangers and Emergencies	507
16.29	How and what... like?	508
16.30	Question tags	517
16.31	More about question tag?	518
16.32	Short answers and reply questions	516
16.33	Addition to remarks	516
16.34	Structure with 'so' and 'Not'	517
	➤ Review Exercises	524
	➤ Answer key	526

Part III: COMMUNICATIVE WRITING

Unit Seventeen: ESSAY WRITING

17.1	Essay writing processes	530
17.2	The Main Idea, Topic Sentence and Supporting Sentences	530
17.3	Essay structures	531
17.4	Using transitional words	533
17.5	Narrative essay	535

17.6	Descriptive essay	538
17.7	Expository essay	540
17.8	Argumentative essay	544

Unit Eighteen: LETTER WRITING

18.1	Formal Letter (business)	552
18.2	Informal letter (friendly)	552
18.3	Writing emails	564
18.4	Texting	568

Unit: Nineteen PUNCTUATION AND CAPITALIZATION

19.1	Punctuation marks (full stop, comma, semicolon)	575
19.2	Capitalization	589

Unit Twenty: SPELLING AND WORD POWER

20.1	Spelling rules	607
20.2	Building Vocabulary (word power)	617
	➤ Review Exercise	637
	➤ Answer key	638

Unit Twenty One: ENGLISH LITERATURE

21.1	Meaning of Literature	639
21.2	Figurative language	639
21.3	Social Language	643
21.4	Other Useful English Phrases for Every Day Use	652
21.5	Commonly Confused Words	660
	➤ Appendix	664

1. COLLOCATIONS

1.1 Collocation and other expressions:

as and like
As if and as though
when and if
If and in case
make and let / allow
make and do
whether and if

- A collocation is a set of words that often go together.
→ The examples might include:
 - Pen and paper
 - Fish and chips
 - Pencil and rubber
 - Chicken and rice
 - Bits and pieces
 - Odds and ends
- Collocation refers to a relationship between words that frequently occur together, so collocational meaning refers to association that a word acquires in its collocation:
Examples:

Pretty { girl
boy
women
flower
colour
garden

So, the combination of these (**collocations**) just sounds "right" to native speaker, who use them all the time. On the other hand, other combination may be **unnatural** and just sound "wrong". That is why say **collocation** refers to how words go together or form fixed relationship.
For example: Say **make** lunch, not **do** lunch.

Say **knock** the door, not **touch** the door.
 Say a **quick** shower, not a **fast** shower.
 Say **high** temperature, not a **tall** temperature.
 Say **heavy** rain, not **thick** rain.
 Say **blonde** hair, not **beige** hair (for female).
 Say **discharged** from hospital, not **released** from hospital.
 Say **scenic** view, not **scenic** picture.
 Say the **fast** train, not the **quick** train.

• Collocation maybe strong or weak.

Strong collocation, as mentioned above, are where the link between the two words are quite fixed and restricted **weak collocations**, on the other hand, where a word can collocate with many other words.

Example:

	big	} house, camera chance, gun, upset news, pain, worry
Say :	large	
	enormous	

1.2 Collocation with (have, do, make, take, break, catch pay, save, keep, come, go, get)

have
 have a bath
 have a drink
 have a good time
 have a holiday
 have a problem
 have a relationship
 have a rest
 have a lunch
 have sympathy

take
 take a break
 take a chance
 take a look
 take a rest
 take a taxi
 take a seat
 take an exam
 take notes

do
 do business
 do nothing
 do someone a favour
 do the cooking
 do the house work
 do the shopping
 do your best
 do your hair
 do your homework

break
 break a habit
 break a leg
 break a promise
 break a record
 break a window
 break someone's heart
 break the ice
 break the news to someone

make
 make a difference
 make a mess
 make a mistake
 make noise
 make an effort
 make furniture
 make money
 make progress
 make trouble

catch
 catch a ball
 catch a bus
 catch a chill
 catch a cold
 catch a thief
 catch a fire
 catch sight of
 catch someone's attention
 eye

take someone's place

pay
 pay a fine
 pay attention
 pay by credit card
 Pay by cash
 pay interest
 pay someone a compliment
 pay someone a visit
 pay the bill
 pay the price
 pay respect

come
 come close
 come complete with
 come direct
 come early
 come first
 come interview
 come last
 come on time
 come prepared
 come right back
 come second
 come to compromise
 come to a decision
 come to an agreement
 come to an end
 come to a stand still
 come to terms with
 come to a total off
 come to under attack

break the rules

save
 save electricity
 save energy
 save money
 save one's strength
 save someone a seat
 save something to a life
 save something to a disk
 save time
 Save yourself the trouble

go
 go abroad
 go astray
 go bad
 go bald
 go bankrupt
 go blind
 go crazy
 go dark
 go deaf
 go fishing
 go mad
 go mad
 go missing
 go on foot
 go on line
 go out of business
 go quiet
 go sailing
 go to war
 go yellow

catch a flu

keep
 keep a diary
 keep a promise
 keep a secret
 keep an appointment
 keep calm
 keep in touch
 keep control
 keep quiet
 keep someone's place
 Keep the change

get
 get a job
 get a shock
 get angry
 get divorced
 get drunk
 get frightened
 get home
 get lost
 get married
 get nowhere
 get permission
 get pregnant
 get ready
 get started
 get dressed
 get impression
 get the message
 get the sack
 get upset
 get wet
 get worried

1.3 Collocations related to "time"

Bang on time
 Dead on time
 Free time
 From dawn till dusk
 Great deal of time
 Early/ later 19th century

next few days
 past few week
 right on time
 run out of time
 time goes by
 time passes

1.4 Collocations related to business English

annual turnover
keep in mind
break off negotiations
close a deal
close a meeting
come to the point
dismiss an offer

draw a conclusion
draw your attention
launch a new product
go bankrupt
go into partnership
make a profit/ loss

1.5 Types of collocations

There are several different types of **collocations** made from combinations of **verb, noun, adjectives**, etc. Some of the most common types are:

- **adverb + adjective**
completely satisfied ✓
downright satisfied ✗
- **adjective + noun:**
✓ excruciating pain
✗ excruciating joy
- **noun + verb**
✓ lions roar
✗ lions shout
- **verb + noun**
✓ commit suicide
✗ undertake suicide
- **verb + expression with preposition**
✓ burst into tears
✗ blow- up-in tears
- **verb + adverb**
✓ wave frantically
✗ wave feverishly

1.6 Sample Collocations

A. Adverb + adjective

Invading that country was an **utterly stupid** thing to do we entered a **richly decorated** room. Are you **fully aware** of the implications of your action?

B. Adjective + noun

The doctor ordered him to take **regular exercise**.
The Titanic **sank** on its **maiden voyage**.
He was writing on the ground in **excruciating pain**.

C. Noun + noun

Let's give Mr Solomon a **round of applause**.
The **ceasefire agreement** came in to effect at 5 am.

I'd like to buy two bars of soap please.

D. Noun + verb

The lion started to **roar** when it heard the **dog barking**.
The **bomb went off** when he started the **car engine**.

E. Verb + noun

The prisoner was hanged for **committing murder**.
I always try to **do my homework** in the morning, after **making my bed**.
He has been asked to give a **presentation** about his work.

F. Verb + expression with preposition

We had to return home because we **had run out of money**.
At first her eyes filled with horror, and then she **burst into tears**.
Their behavior was enough to **drive anybody to crime**.

G. Verb + adverb

She placed her keys **gently** on the table and sat down.
Tison **whispered softly** in Robel's ear.
I **vaguely remember** that it was growing dark when we left.

1.7 Compounds and idioms

Compounds are units of meaning formed with two or more words. The words are usually written separately, but some may have a hyphen or be written as one word.

Often the meaning of the compound can be guessed by knowing the meaning of the individual words. It is not always simple to detach collocations and compounds.

- car park
- post office
- narrow- minded
- shoelaces
- teapot

Idioms: are collocations of words in a fixed order that have a sense that cannot be guessed by knowing the meaning of the individual vocabularies. For example: **pass the buck** is an idiom meaning **to pass responsibility for a problem to another person to avoid dealing with it oneself**.

1.9 As if and As though

- As if and as though mean the same.
- We use them to say what a situation seems like.
- Are used to say how somebody/ something looks, sounds, feels, behaves etc.
- They introduce adverbial clause of manner.

Pattern:

as if/ as though + subject + present/ past verb
as if/ as though + past verb with present meaning

- A. To indicate unreality/ improbability/ doubt in present.
 (But we use a past verb)

Example

Alem is only 25. Why do you talk about her as if/ as though she was an old woman (Meaning: She is not an old)
 I don't appreciate her. She talks as if/ as though she knew everything (Meaning: She doesn't know everything)
 He orders me about as if/as though I were his wife.
 (Meaning: I am not his wife)
 He always behaves as if/as though he were rich.
 (Meaning: He is not rich)

- B. After any verbs describing behavior.

Example

Hana was trembling as if/as though she had been a ghost.
 She acted as if/as though she were mad.

- C. To describe a past situation using past perfect
 (to refer to a real or imaginary action in the past)
 He talked about Paris as if/as though he had been there.
 (Meaning: he hasn't or probably hasn't or we don't know whether he has or not)

- ♦ Note: The verb preceding as if/though can be put into a past/ present without changing the tense of the subjunctive.

Example: He looks/ looked as if/as though he hadn't had a decent meal for a month.

- D. As if/as though after linking verbs be, seem, sound, look, smell, taste, feel, etc.

Example

I feel as if/ as though I am floating on air.
 Tariku looks very tired. He looks as if/ as though he needs a good rest.
 It sounds as if/ as though the situation will get worse.
 It smells as if/ as though someone has been smoking in here.

- E. As if/ as though construction with the pronoun 'it'

Example

It sounds as if/ as though the situation will get worse.
 It feels as if/ as though it's going to rain.
 (= I feel that this is going to happen)

- F. As if/ as though with 'exclamation'
 (at the beginning of a sentence)

Example

As if I care whether she is offended!
 (Meaning: I don't care)
As though it matters/ mattered!
 (Meaning: It doesn't matter)

- G. We can use were instead of was when we express unreal ideas after as if/ as though.

Example

She talks as if/ as though she were rich. (but she isn't)
 They treat me as if/ as though I were their son. (But I am n't)
 Why do you talk about him as if/ as though he were an old man. (But he is not)

- ♦ Note: 'was' is an informal in this case (see 'A' in the above)

- H. We can use 'as if/ as though' with verbs to say how somebody does something.

Example

He ran as if he was running for his life.
 When I told them my plan, they looked at me as though I was mad.

- ♦ Note: In an informal style, like is often used in the same way as as if/ as though (in American English)

Example

It looks as if it is going to rain.
 (It looks like it is going to rain)
 I feel as if I am getting cold.

(I feel like I am getting cold)

Illustrative Examples

1. She works as a fashion model.

☞ This sentence is to mean:

- A. She is a model. C. She might be a model.
 B. She seems to be a model. D. She will be a model.

☞ **Explanations**☞ We use **as** to talk about a job/ function.**as + noun**

When we say: 'He is working as a waiter', we mean that he is a waiter/ his job is a waiter.

Don't say: He works like a waiter.

Answer: A

2. Being in love is an illness.

- A. as B. like C. as if D. as though

☞ **Explanations**☞ We use **like** as a preposition to say that things are similar.**like + noun**

Your smile is like your sister's.

(= Your smile is the same as your sister)

Answer: B

3. On Friday, _____ on Monday, we meet at night.

- A. like B. as if C. as D. when

☞ **Explanations**

☞ We can also use 'as' before prepositional phrase.

On Saturday, as on Monday, I don't feel well.

(NOT: like on Monday)

Answer: C

4. _____ I explained, it's a public holiday today.

- A. As if B. like C. If D. As

☞ **Explanations**☞ We can also use **as** before words say, know, expect, thought, told, see, suggest, promised, etc

• As I said, you are late.

• Rahel arrived late, as we expected.

• I haven't much money, as you know.

• They did as they promised.

Answer: D

5. Everyone is ill at home. Our house is like a hospital.

☞ Our house is:

- A. not really a hospital.
 B. really a hospital.

Answer: A (similar to a hospital)

6. Which is an informal expression?
 A. We drive on the left as you do in Britain.
 B. Like I told you, it is an offer I can't refuse.
 C. He spends money like a millionaire.
 D. He works as a waiter.

☞ **Explanations**

- 'like' is a preposition, used before a noun/ pronoun.
- 'as' is a conjunction, used before a clause.
- Thus, using **like** with a clause is an informal style. (like is more informal than as before a clause)

Answer: B

7. She dresses like a fashion model.

☞ This is the same as:

- A. She is a model.
 B. She works as a fashion model.
 C. Her dress is as fashion model.
 D. Her clothes are similar to a model's.

☞ **Explanations**

- 'like' in the question above is to introduce 'similar to'
- Your smile is like your sister.

(= similar to your sister)

Answer: D

8. He regarded me his best friend.

- A. as B. like C. because D. as if

☞ **Explanations**We can use **as** after the verbs regard, describe, etc.

- Don't regard this as a problem.

Answer: A

9. In which sentence is 'as' used to talk about jobs, functions, etc?

- A. Tsion failed her driving test, as she expected.
 B. Amanuel worked as a waiter last summer.
 C. He did as he promised me.
 D. As you know, I don't have much money.

Clues

When defining a job or a function of something or somebody, we use **as**, not **like**.

In the position: A few years ago, I worked as a bus driver.

(NOT: like) of She used her umbrella as a weapon (NOT: like)

10. Do you mind using this saucer a plate?

- A. like B. as though C. as D. as like

☞ This question is the same as Q10 above; it is about a job's function of something.

Sara works in here. She uses this room as her study room.

11. The way your sister plays the violin sounds two cats fighting.

- A. like B. as C. when D. same

☞ **Explanations**

We use 'like' to talk about things being similar.

12. The body sank a stone to the bottom of the river.

- A. as B. as the same C. as if D. like

(See Q12 above) Answer: D

13. Like your father, I wish you have a wonderful results.

☞ This is the same as:

- A. Both your father and I wish you have a wonderful results.
B. Your father wishes you have a wonderful results and so do I.
C. You and your father will have a wonderful results.
D. A and B.

☞ **Explanations**

☞ Look the differences:

As your teacher, I advise you to study hard.

(Meaning: I am your teacher)

Like your teacher, I advise you to study hard.

(Meaning: We both advise you)

I am not actually your teacher but being in the position of your teacher.

Answer: A

14. Which is wrong?

- A. His eyes are like knives.
B. My brother is not at all like me.
C. I used my shoe like a hammer.
D. She left as she came, silently.

Hints

♦ To talk about jobs, functions/purpose, we use as, not like

♦ We use this room as an office (NOT: like)

Answer: C

15. I enjoy sports swimming and jumping.

- A. as B. like C. as if D. all

☞ **Explanations**

We can also use 'like' for illustration or to give examples.

Now I need food like sandwich.

(Now I need food such as sandwich)

Answer: B

16. As we missed the bus, we had to go on foot.

☞ In this sentence as is used:

- A. to give example C. to present reason
B. to express similarity D. to talk about a job

☞ **Explanations**

'As' can also be used to introduce a reason clause to mean 'because'.

As it was raining, we stayed at home.

(Because it was raining, we stayed at home)

Answer: C

17. As I said before, I am sorry.

☞ This is the same as:

- A. I am sorry, and I said so before.
B. I am sorry, before I said so.
C. Before I am sorry, I said something.
D. ambiguous.

Answer: A

18. It looks rain.

- A. like B. as C. as if

♦ Clues: We say looks like + noun.

Answer: A

19. It looks it is going to rain.

- A. as B. like C. as if D. the same

☞ **Explanations**

We use as if/ as though to say how somebody/ something looks/sounds/ feels, etc.

♦ Form: as if/ as though + clause (sub + verb)

She looked as if she had been crying.

She behaved as if nothing had happened.

Answer: C

20. This house is beautiful. It is a place.

- A. as B. like C. as if

Answer: B

21. You met your friend. She has a black eye and some plasters on her face.
You say to her:
- You look as if you have been in a fight.
 - You look as though you have been in a fight.
 - You look like brave.
 - A and B

➤ **Explanations**

- As if/ as though are to mean the same.
22. The sky is full of black clouds. You say:

Answer: D

- It is going to rain.
- It looks as if it is going to rain.
- It looks like going to rain.
- It will rain soon.

Answer: B

Note: In American English (informal) 'like' is often used instead of as if/as though.

- It looks like it is going to rain. (It looks as if it is going to rain) But it is very informal style.
23. Shemsu is a terrible driver. He drives the only driver on the road.

- like he was
- as if he was
- as if he were
- that he were

➤ **Explanations**

'Were' is often used instead of 'was' when we express unreal/imaginary ideas after as if/ as though.

Examples

- He looks as if he is rich. (perhaps he is rich)
- She talks as if she were rich. (But she is not rich)
- He looked at me as though I were mad. (But I am not a mad)

Answer: C

♦ **Note:** 'was' is also possible, but it is an informal style.

24. Daniel spends money it grows on trees.
- as if
 - as
 - like
 - because

Answer: A

25. That poor dog looks it never gets fed.

- as if
- as though
- as
- A and

♦ **Note:** 'as if' is always used after be, seem, look, sound and followed by a clause. **Answer: D**

Put in like, as, as if/ as though where necessary.

- I feel I am floating on air.
 - From what Emma said, it sounds she and Miki are going to get married.
 - You need to click on the box, I showed you.
 - They say she drinks a fish.
 - She got the job, I thought she would.
 - He works a dog.
 - He was treated a king when he won the lottery. Nothing.
 - She behaved nothing happened.
 - I explained, it is a public holiday today.
 - You are just your father.
 - He acts a king.
 - It was a long time ago that we first met but if it were yesterday.
 - I am 20 years old, so please don't talk to me a child.
 - You have just run one kilometer. You are absolutely exhausted.
- You say to a friend: I feel run a marathon.

Answer Key

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 26. as if/ as though | 33. as if/ as though |
| 27. as if/ as though | 34. as |
| 28. as | 35. like |
| 29. like | 36. like |
| 30. as | 37. as if/ as though |
| 31. like | 38. like |
| 32. like | 39. as if/ as though |

1.10 If and When

♦ Both expressions are used to present a clause which independent on another clause.

A. If

We use if for things that will possibly happen.

(We use if to say that we are not sure whether something will happen) It introduces perhapsity.

'If' is often used for things that **may** happen.

♦ **Pattern:**

If + sub + verb (present) + sub + will + verb

Example

If I make a lot of money, I will start some business.

(Perhaps I'll make a lot of money; perhaps I won't)

If you hear any news, can you ring me immediately?

(You **might** hear some news)

I will probably go for a walk later on if it stays fine.

(It **might** stay fine)

Don't worry if I am late tonight.

(Perhaps I will be late; perhaps I won't be late)

♦ **Note:** We don't use 'when' in the above examples/ contexts.

B. When

We use 'when' for things which are **sure** to happen.

(Something that we know **will** happen)

♦ **Pattern:**

When + sub + verb (present) + sub + will + verb

Example

When it gets dark, I will come (NOT: If it gets dark)

(I am **sure** it will get dark)

I'll see you in March **when** I come to Addis Ababa.

(I am **sure** I will come to Addis Ababa)

I am going shopping this afternoon. (for sure)

→ **When** I go shopping, I will buy some food.

♦ **Note 1:** We can use either **if** or **when** in contexts where they mean 'every time'

Compare

If you run, you use up energy.

When you run, you use up energy.

♦ **Note 2:** We can use both **if** and **when** in contexts where they mean that 'always happen' / 'permanent truth'.

Compare

If you heat ice, it turns into water.

When you heat ice, it turns into water.

♦ **Note 3:** We use **if** (not **when**) for something impossible or imaginary.

Compare

When I were you, I would refuse. (wrong)

If I were you, I would refuse. (right)

♦ (We'll see about when and if in time and conditional clause respectively in detail)

1.11 In case and if

In case is not normally used like **if**

A. in case

We use **in case** to say why somebody does or doesn't something. Or To talk about things we do 'because' something else might happen. (in case meaning because)

♦ **In case + present tense**

Example

I am taking my umbrella with me **in case** it rains.

(Meaning: because it might rain later)

Write down his address **in case** we forget it.

(Meaning: because we might forget)

I am buying some food. I am hungry later.

→ I am buying some food now **in case** I am hungry later.

(Meaning: because I might hungry later)

♦ **Note 1:-** In the examples above, **in case** is used to say that you do something now **in case** / **because** something happens later.

- '**If**' is not allowed in this case.

Lulu might phone to night. I don't want to go out **in case** he phones. (Meaning: because it is possible he phones)

♦ **Note 2:** We can use **in case** + **past** to say why somebody did something.

Example

I wrote my address for Martha **in case** she couldn't remember.

(Meaning: It was possible that she could forget)

They rang the bell again **in case** they hadn't heard it first.

(Meaning: because perhaps they didn't hear)

- ♦ **Note 3:** After **in case** we don't use **will**. Instead, we use **present tense** with a future meaning.

Compare

Take an umbrella with you. It might rain.

- Take an umbrella **in case** it **will** rain (wrong)
- Take an umbrella **in case** it **rain** (right)

- ♦ **Note 4:** We can also use **should + infinitive**.
In this structure **should** means **might**.

Example

Go buy train **in case** there should/ might be a lot of traffic on the roads.

Should is more common after **in case** in the past.

- ♦ **Note 5:** '**in case**' to give advice and warnings.

Example

Don't touch an acid **in case** it harms you. (warning)

Don't go out without a coat **in case** you get a cold. (warning)

Study hard **in case** the exam should be difficult. (advice)

✗ We have just mentioned that **in case** is not the same as **if**

Compare

I am buying some sugar **in case** I make tea later.

(Meaning: I am buying it now, before I make it)

I'll buy some sugar **if** I make tea later.

(Meaning: I'll buy it at the time I make it)

You should insure your bicycle **in case** it is stolen.

(Meaning: because it might be stolen)

- ♦ **Note 6:** **In case** with '**of**' (**in case of**) is not the same as '**in case**'.
'**In case of** = **if there is**'

Example

In case of the fire, please leave the building as quickly as possible.

(**In case of** the fire = **if there is** the fire)

In case of emergency, phone this number.

(**In case of** emergency = **if there is** emergency)

- ♦ **Note 7:** '**If**' meaning '**although**' or '**even if**' but not '**in case**'

Example

I will finish this report **if** it kills me.

(= I'll finish this report **although/ even if** it kills me)

Summary

- ✗ Don't Confuse '**in case**' and '**if**'
- Consider the following patterns carefully.

I do 'A' **in case** 'B' happens.
= I do 'A' first because 'B' might happen later.

I do 'A' **if** 'B' happens.
= I do 'A' if 'B' has happened.

1.12 Whether and if

- A. In reported question, we can use both **whether** and **if**.
- ♦ **Note:** Reported question in this context means which requires yes/ no answer.

Example

I am not sure **whether/ if** I'll have time.

I asked **whether/ if** she had any letters for me.

- ♦ **Note:** We prefer '**whether**' before '**or**', especially in a formal style.

Example

Let me know **whether** you can come **or not**.

(Here, **if** is possible, but it is an informal style)

- B. After '**discuss**', only '**whether**' is possible.
We discussed **whether** we should close the shop.
(**NOT:** We discussed **if**)

- ♦ **Note:** We can use **whether** **or** as a conjunction, with a similar meaning to '**it doesn't matter whether** **or**'. The clause with **whether** **or** can come at the beginning of the sentence or after the other clause.

Example

Whether you like it **or not**, you will have to pay.

You will have to pay, **whether** you like it **or not**.

Illustrative Examples

I. Look at the information in brackets and complete the sentences using **if/ when** and a verb in the present simple.

40. (I may see Rahel tonight.) _____, I will tell her the news.
 41. (Bety is coming soon.) _____, can you let her in please?
 42. (The alarm will ring soon.) _____, we all have to leave the building.
 43. (I might feel better tomorrow.) _____ I'll probably go back to work.
 44. (This film finishes at ten.) _____, I'll stop the video.
 45. (The plan may not work) _____, we'll have to think of something else.

II. Put in 'if or when'

46. Don't worry _____ I am late tonight.
 47. I am going shopping. _____ you want anything, I can get it for you.
 48. We can eat at home or, _____ you prefer, we can go to a restaurant.
 49. _____ we heat ice, it melts.
 50. _____ it gets dark, I'll come.
 51. I am going away for a few days. I'll phone you _____ I get back.
 52. I am going to Adama next week. _____ I am there, I hope to visit a friend of mine.
 53. Tsion might phone while I am out this evening. _____ she does, can you take a message?

III. 'If or in case?'

54. I am taking umbrella with me _____ it rains.
 55. I'll open the umbrella _____ it rains.
 56. People phone the fire brigade _____ their houses catch fire.
 57. People insure their houses _____ they catch fire.
 58. We have a burglar alarm _____ somebody tries to break in.

59. The burglar alarm will go off _____ somebody tries to break in.
 60. I will let you know _____ I need help.
 61. I'll take my mobile phone _____ I need to phone you.
 62. I'll buy a drink at the concert _____ I get thirsty.
 63. I am taking a drink _____ I get thirsty.

Possible answers

- I.
 40. If I see Rahel to night, I will tell her the news.
 (I may see her, or I may not)
 41. When Bety comes, can you let her come in, please?
 (Betty will come = certainly)
 42. When the alarm rings, we all have to leave the building.
 (the alarm will ring)
 43. If I feel better tomorrow, I will probably go back to work.
 (I might feel better)
 44. When this film finishes, I will stop the video.
 (This film will finish)
 45. If the plan doesn't work, we'll have to think of something else.
 (The plan might not work.)

II.

46. if 47. if 48. if 49. if
 50. when 51. when 52. when 53. if

♦ Note: 'will' never be used with **when** and **if** sentence.

{ **When** = introduces a future certainty.
 { **If** = introduces a future probability }

III.

54. in case 55. if 56. if 57. in case 58. in case
 59. if 60. if 61. in case 62. if 63. in case

♦ Note: We don't also use **will** after **in case** (**In case + will = wrong**)

64. Hana asked me _____ I say her friend.
 A. when B. as C. if D. in case

Clues: In reported question (yes/ no), we use **whether** or **if**.

Answer: C

65. _____ you believe or not, my mother will get a baby.

A. whether B. if C. as D. when
 Clues: We use 'whether ... or' as a conjunction. Here, we use if instead of 'whether'

Answer: A

1.13 Make, let and allow

A. Make

'Make' can be meant as to force/ to cause someone to do something.

♦ Pattern: **make + object + infinitive (without to)**

Example

You **make me laugh**. (= you cause me to laugh)
 Her parents **made her help** with the house work.
 (..... forced her)

The film **made me cry**, it was so sad.

(..... caused me)

I can't **make** the washing machine work.

(I can't cause)

The rain **made** the grass wet.

(the rain caused)

B. Let/ allow

'Let' is with the meaning allow.

♦ Pattern: **let + object + infinitive (without to)**

Example

I am **letting** my hair grow.

(= I am allowing)

Don't **let** me forget to phone Emebet.

(= Don't allow me to forget to phone)

His father **lets** him do what he likes.

(= allows him to do)

They don't **let** us park here.

(= don't allow us to park here)

♦ Note: But we can't use 'make' instead of let and allow.
 Make and let in the passive take the full infinitive.

Compare

He **made** me move my car.

(I was made to move my car) - passive

The customs officer **made** Hana open her case.

(Hana was made to open her case) - passive

They **let** me know the case.

(I was let/ allowed to know the case) - passive

1.14 Make and do

These words are very similar, but there are some differences.

1. We use **do** when we don't say exactly what activity we are talking about:

For example with something, nothing, anything, everything, what.

Example

Do something.

What shall we **do**?

I like **doing** nothing.

Then he **did** a very strange thing.

2. We use **do** when we talk about work, and in structure **doing**.

Example

I am going to **do** any work today.

I am going to **do** some reading.

I dislike **doing** house work.

I hate **doing** the cooking and shopping.

Would you like to **do** my job?

3. We often use **make** to talk about constructing, building, creating, etc.

Example

I have just **made** a cake.

My father and I once **made** a boat.

Let's **make** a plan.

Illustrative Examples

66. The examiner _____ me sit quietly until everyone had finished.

A. made B. let C. did D. allowed

♦ Clues: Don't use let, in the sense of make, meaning to force.

Answer: A

67. Kusa didn't _____ me get my back.
A. make B. leave C. let D. take

♦ Clues: Let means to allow.

Let without to, but allow with to.

Leave means to abandon or to go away from.

68. The carpenter _____ a large table. Answer: C
A. let B. allow C. did D. made

♦ Clues: To make primarily means to construct/ Manufacture something, while to do means to accomplish a thing.

69. You must _____ your work carefully. Answer: D
A. let B. do C. make D. allow

70. I _____ a shower every morning. Answer: B
A. take B. have C. make D. A & B

Clues: We say: We take/ have a shower, not make a shower.

71. Please _____ me help you. Answer: B
A. make B. let C. leave D. make to

72. Tigist: What are you _____ ?
Bahel: A cake.
A. doing B. making C. performing D. all
Clues: We make a cake, not we do it. Answer: B

73. You should always try to _____ your best.
A. make B. let C. do D. allow
Clues: We do our best, we do someone a favour. Answer: C

74. Glasses _____ him look older.
A. let B. make C. to make D. leave
him do what he wants. Answer: B
A. Let B. Make C. To let D. To make Answer: A

76. Her parents let her _____ her own school.
A. to choose B. choosing C. choose D. to choosing
Clues: It is uncommon to use 'to' after let Answer: C

77. Her parents made her _____ her homework.
A. to do B. doing C. do D. to doing

Clues: It is also uncommon to use infinitive - to after 'make' Answer: C

- I. Put do or make in front of these words.
- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 78. _____ one's best. | 86. _____ a noise. |
| 79. _____ an appointment. | 87. _____ something for a living. |
| 80. _____ business with someone. | 88. _____ progress. |
| 81. _____ an experiment. | 89. _____ an impression. |
| 82. _____ an arrangement. | 90. _____ somebody a service. |
| 83. _____ research. | 91. _____ a journey. |
| 84. _____ one's hair. | 92. _____ a fortune. |
| 85. _____ an attempt. | 93. _____ war. |

- II. Put make or let/ allow in the following sentence
94. My parents often _____ me clean up the room.
95. Her mother _____ her read what she likes.
96. My father doesn't _____ me drink beer.
97. They didn't _____ us to look at the house.
98. His white hair _____ him look older than he is.
99. Please _____ me forget to give you back the money I owe you.

Answer Key

- | | | |
|-----------|----------|---------------|
| I. 78. Do | 86. Make | II. 94. make |
| 79. Make | 87. Make | 95. lets |
| 80. Do | 88. Make | 96. let |
| 81. Do | 89. Make | 97. allow |
| 82. Make | 90. Do | 98. makes |
| 83. Do | 91. Make | 99. don't let |
| 84. Do | 92. Make | |
| 85. Make | 93. Make | |

Review Exercises

1. Hold it in both hands _____ she does.
A. as B. if C. like D. when
2. Rihanna sings. _____ She has a lovely voice.
A. as a bird C. the same bird
B. like a bird D. if she is a bird
3. He treats her _____ she were his own wife.
A. as though C. in spite of
B. so that D. because of

4. It looks _____ they are having a serious argument.
A. as if B. as though C. because D. therefore E. A and B
5. Why is there no-one in the stadium?
It looks _____ the match has been cancelled.
A. as B. if C. as if D. like as if
6. _____ the film finishes, I'll stop the video
A. If B. When C. As if D. Whether
7. Take your coat _____ it gets cold
A. when B. if C. in case D. as if
8. I'll buy a drink at the concert _____ I get thirsty.
A. in case B. if C. when D. as
9. My brother can _____ almost any broken car work.
A. let B. make C. lets D. makes
10. The teacher made the students _____ the exercise again.
A. to write B. rote C. write D. writing
11. I felt _____ I was dying.
A. when B. as if C. like D. if
12. Please _____ me laugh when the teacher is in the class.
A. don't make B. don't let C. don't making D. not make
13. When it gets dark, I will come home means:
A. I am sure I'll come B. I will get dark C. perhaps it'll get dark D. A and B
14. I am writing down her address _____ I forget it.
A. if B. when C. as if D. in case
15. _____ me know what you really want.
A. Make B. Let C. When D. If
16. She talks _____ she were rich.
A. as if B. as though C. like D. A and B
17. I don't _____ anybody to talk to me like that.
A. allow B. let C. make D. all
18. Her parents _____ her stay up late.
A. allow B. let C. like D. makes
19. I have bought a chicken _____ your mother should stay to lunch.
A. if B. when C. as D. in case
20. I'll let you know _____ I need help.
A. if B. incase C. when D. as if
21. _____ I die, I lost consciousness.

31. A. When B. If C. In case D. none
22. _____ you know, I won't come tomorrow.
A. When B. If C. As D. Like
23. Wondimu talks _____ he knew everything.
A. as B. like C. when D. as if
24. _____ usual, he left his pen at home.
A. As B. As if C. When D. Like
25. _____ you like or not, Abebech is our teacher.
A. If B. Whether C. Because D. As
26. She doesn't look _____ her mother.
A. like as if B. like C. as D. similar
27. He looked at me _____ I were mad.
A. as if B. as though C. like D. A and B
28. Do you hear that music next door? It sounds _____ they are having a party.
A. like B. as if C. when D. if
29. She asked me _____ we would meet at school.
A. if B. whether C. as D. A and B
30. He drives _____ if he were the only driver on the road.
A. like B. when C. whether D. as

Answer Keys

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. E 5. C 6. B 7. C 8. B
9. B 10. C 11. B 12. A 13. D 14. D 15. B 16. D
17. A 18. B 19. D 20. A 21. A 22. C 23. D 24. A
25. B 26. B 27. D 28. B 29. D 30. D

Answer Key

1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B
5. B 6. B 7. A 8. C
9. A 10. A

11. Clue: You can 'I didn't catch it' if you didn't understand
A word, but usually you learn or pick up a new word
Answer: D
12. Clue: In English we say 'take a photograph'
Answer: B
13. Clue: we usually use the verb 'do' with business, e.g. It's been a

pleasure doing business with you, not having making business.

14. Clue: If we want someone to help us, we say:
"Could you do me a favour?"

15. Clue: Choice 'C' the correct answer because 'move its decision' is not correct. Answer: D

16. Clue: When we talk about going to the supermarket, we usually say 'do the shopping' e.g., My sister often does the shopping when I am at work.

2. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

- We use a conditional clause to state the dependence of one circumstance or sets of circumstances on another.

Conditional Sentences are usually into three basic types referred to as:

1. First conditional (real/ probable/ likely)
2. Second conditional (unreal/ improbable/ unlikely)
3. Third conditional (impossible/ rejected)

2.1. First Conditional

- This type of condition is often called 'open' or 'real' condition. Because the condition to be satisfied is 'real'.
- We use Type 1 conditionals to describe what will or won't (probably) happen.
- We can use all present tenses after if, not just the simple present (i.e. present continuous/ present perfect)
- We can use all future tenses in the main clause (i.e. can, could, should, may, might)
 - The verb in the if-clause is in the present tense.
 - The verb in the main-clause is in the future simple. (will/ shall, may, can, might + infinitive)

Example

If I get any news, I will tell you.

If I go to Nazareth, I will travel by train.

If it rains, I will give you a lift.

- Note: It doesn't matter which comes first. i.e. An if-clause can come at the beginning or end of a sentence. When it comes first, it is often separated by a comma, and when a main-clause comes first, a comma is not used.

Example

You will get on time if you run.

I will be very happy if you accept my offer.

2. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

- ♦ We use a **conditional clause** to state the dependence of one circumstance or sets of circumstances on another.

Conditional Sentences are usually into three basic types referred to as:

1. **First conditional** (real/ probable/ likely)
2. **Second conditional** (unreal/ improbable/ unlikely)
3. **Third conditional** (impossible/ rejected)

2.1. First Conditional

- This type of condition is often called '**open**' or '**real**' condition. Because the condition to be satisfied is '**real**'.
- We use **Type 1 conditionals** to describe what will or won't (probably) happen.
- We can use all present tenses after **if**, not just the simple present (i.e. present continuous/ present perfect)
- We can use all future tenses in the main clause (i.e. **can**, **could**, **should**, **may**, **might**)
 - ☞ The verb in the **if-clause** is in the **present tense**.
 - ☞ The verb in the **main-clause** is in the **future simple**.
(**will/ shall**, **may**, **can**, **might** + infinitive)

Example

If I get any news, I **will tell** you.

If I go to Nazareth, I **will travel** by train.

If it rains, I **will give** you a lift.

- ♦ **Note:** It doesn't matter which comes first.

i.e. An **if-clause** can come at the beginning or end of a sentence.

When it comes first, it is often separated by a comma, and when a **main-clause** comes first, a comma is not used.

Example

You **will get** on time **if** you run.

I **will be** very happy **if** you accept my offer.

- The meaning is present or future. The action in the if-clause is quite probable (present tenses for future)

- ♦ **Note:** We can use present continuous (e.g. are doing) or the present perfect (e.g. have done) in the if-clause.

Example

If we are expecting visitors, the flat will need a good clean.

If you have finished with computer, I will put it away.

- ♦ **Note:** The main-clause often has will. But we can use other modal verbs (can, might, should, may)

Example

If it is fine tomorrow, we may go swimming.

If you haven't got a television, you can't watch it, can you?

If she jogs regularly, she might lose weight.

If Daniel is going to a job interview, he should have a tie.

- ♦ **Note:** Conditional type 1 can be used in offers and suggestion.

Example

If you need a ticket, I can get you one. (offer)

If you feel like seeing the sights, we can take a bus tour. (suggestion)

- ♦ **Note:** We can also use it in warnings and threats.

Example

If you go on like this, you will make yourself ill. (threats)

If you don't apologize, I will never speak to you again. (warning)

Other forms of first conditional

A. Zero Conditional

- We use if + two present tense in zero conditional.
- It is to express automatic/ habitual or something which is always true (permanent truth/ scientific fact)
- If-clause + present simple and main-clause + present simple
('will' can be omitted)

Example

If you heat ice, it turns to water.

If you heat water, it boils.

If you go higher, you get colder.

B. Imperative with first conditional

- We can use the imperative in place of an if-clause to comment, threat, request.

Imperative + Conjunction + Clause

1. We follow the imperative with 'and' in place of an if-clause in the affirmative.

Example

If you fail to pay, they will cut off the electricity.

(fail to pay and they'll cut off the electricity)

2. We follow the imperative with 'or' in place of an if-clause in the negative.

Example

If you don't stop borrowing money, you'll be in trouble.

(stop borrowing money, or you'll be in trouble)

3. Imperative with 'otherwise'

Example

If you don't take a taxi, you'll miss your train.

(Take a taxi, otherwise you'll miss your train)

- ♦ **Note:** Imperatives can also be used in ordinary Type 1 conditions.

Example

Cancel the match if it rains.

If it rains, cancel the match.

C. Unless

- Unless is used in conditional sentence with the meaning if ... not
- Unless is to mean If not or 'except if'

- ♦ **Pattern:**

Unless + affirmative verb

If + negative verb

Example

Unless you belong to the union, you can't work here.

(= If you don't belong to the union, you can't work here)

Unless it rains, I'll pick you up at 6.00.

(= If it doesn't rain, I'll pick you up at 6.00)

Unless you change your mind, I won't be able to help you.

(= expect if you change your mind.)

If you don't change your mind, I won't be able to help you.

(= expect if you change your mind.)

We don't use unless/ if not with another negative verb.

Contrast

Unless you leave at once, you'll be late.

(Wrong: unless + don't)

Unless you start at once, you will be late.

(Right: unless + affirmative verb = start)

→ Unless you start = if you don't start

- If/ unless + will is a wrong expression.

(i.e. with If we use **present** tense to talk about the future)

Compare

I will tell you if I will get any news. (wrong)

I will tell you if I get any news. (right)

Unless you will work much harder, you won't pass the exam. (wrong)

Unless you work much harder, you won't pass the exam.

Exception: We can use will (If + will) when we make a request.

Example

If you will just wait a moment, I'll find someone to help you.
(= please wait a moment.....)

Illustrative Examples

1. Metals _____ if you heat them.

A. expand C. may expand
B. will expand D. are expanding

Explanations

- When we express **automatic** or **habitual** results, we use **present simple** in the main clause, not will

Example

If it sees a strange thing, a dog barks.

If we heat ice, it melts.

(..... will bark or will melt is uncommon)

Answer: A

2. If you wait for me, I _____

A. may come C. had come
B. will come D. would come

Explanations

- Conditional type 1 introduces **present tense** in if-clause and **will + V1** in main-clause.

'wait' in the if-clause is present verb, so **will + base verb** should be used in the main-clause.

Answer: B

3. Fruit is good if it _____ eaten fresh.

A. can be B. is C. will be D. was

Clues: We don't use 'will' in main clause when we express **habitual results**.

Example

If there is a shortage of any product, prices of that product go up (NOT: will go up)

Answer: B

4. _____ fine tomorrow, we will

go. for a picnic

A. If it will be C. If is
B. If it would be D. If it is

Explanations

- If + will is wrong unless we express a request/ willingness of someone.

Compare

If you will ask her, she will tell you. (wrong)

(This is not about a request/ willingness)

If you will come this way, I will take you the manager's office.

(= If you are willing)

Answer: D

5. If you are in doubt, _____

A. you will ask me for help C. you ask me for help
B. ask me for help D. ask you for help

Answer: B

6. If you go picnic later, you _____ your car now.

A. will wash C. must wash
B. would wash D. are washing

Explanations

- 'will' in the main clause expresses **certainty** or **near-certainty**. If we don't feel 'certain' enough to use 'will' or if we want to express the idea of **necessity**, **possibility**, **advisable**, etc. we can use another modal instead (should, might, can, ought to, have to)

Example

If it is fine tomorrow, we might go out (it is possible)

If it is fine tomorrow, we must go out (it's necessary)

If it is fine tomorrow, we should go out (it's advisable)

Answer: C

7. Which conditional sentence is **wrong**?
- A. I will give you 100 dollar if you will win the race.
 B. If you miss the way, ask the police man.
 C. Unless I know the answer, I'll ask my teacher.
 D. I'll put my rain coat on if it rains.

Clues: If + **will** in the normal conditional clause is wrong.
 (See Q4)

8. _____ we hurry, we'll be late.
- A. If B. Unless we don't C. Unless
 D. Don't

Answer: A

Explanations

- We use **unless** + an affirmative verb to express negative conditionals.

Unless = if not (except if)

Example

You can't go in **unless** you are a member. Or

You can't go in **if** you are **not** a member. Or

You can't go in **except** if you are a member. Or

You can go in **only** if you are a member.

9. If she _____ boyfriends, it _____ distract her from her studies.
- A. have/can C. can/ may
 B. has/will D. will have/ will

Answer: C

Clues: Probable condition uses **simple present verb** in if clause, and **will + V1** in main-clause for present or future meaning.

Answer: B

10. If you see my sister, _____ her I will be late home today.
- A. tell C. you tell
 B. you will tell D. none

Explanations

- Instead of **will** - clause, we can use **imperative**.
 The subject or pronoun 'you' is understood.

We don't say: You + will tell

Answer: A

11. If you a lot of children, you'll have less money to educate them.
- A. had B. will have C. have D. have had

Answer: C

12. If you don't come to school tomorrow, you'll miss the test.

☞ These sentences can be expressed:

- A. You don't come and you'll miss the test.

- B. You will miss the test as you don't come.
 C. You should come to school in order not to miss the test.
 D. Unless you can to school tomorrow, you'll miss the test.

Clues: If you **don't** come = **unless** you **come**
 (But we don't say: unless you don't come)

Answer: D

13. Which sentence expresses the correct conditional?

- A. If you heat water to 100°C, it will boil.
 B. We will not catch the bus unless we don't leave now.
 C. If you ask me nicely and I'll mend it for you.
 D. If you don't go now, I will call the police.

Explanations

- General truth doesn't use **will**. (it boils ✓)
- Unless** + negative is not correct. (unless we leave now ✓)
- Imperative** can be used at the beginning instead of 'if' with conjunctions (**and, or, or else, otherwise**)
- ☞ Ask me nicely **and** I'll mend it for you ✓
- ☞ Take a taxi, **otherwise** you will be late.
 (If you don't take a taxi, you'll be late.)

Answer: D

14. You aren't allowed into the club **unless** you're a member.

☞ These sentences can be expressed as:

- A. You aren't allowed **except** if you are a member.
 B. You are allowed into the club **only** if you're a member.
 C. You are not allowed into the club if you aren't a member.
 D. All are correct.

Answer: D

Clues: **Unless** = if ... not = except if = only if (See Q8)

Match the sentence and join them with 'IF'

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 15. You lose your credit card | I can't sleep. |
| 16. You get promoted | You get a warning letter. |
| 17. I drink coffee late at night | You have to ring the bank. |
| 18. You don't pay the bill | Your salary goes up. |
| 19. I try to run fast | The alarm goes off. |
| 20. Someone enters the building | I get out of breath. |

Answer Key is left for you

Clues: We use **present simple** in both clauses (**NOT: Will**)
 Supply the correct forms of the missing verbs

21. If you _____ (be) still ill tomorrow, you ought to stay at home.
22. If he _____ (be leaving) at 6 o'clock, I _____ (ask) him to give me.
23. If it _____ (rain) next weekend, we _____ (not able to) plant the vegetable.
24. If you _____ (have/ forget) to phone, they _____ (will have/ go) without you.
25. _____ (if not) you study hard, you won't pass the exam.
26. It _____ funny if Yonas _____ the job. (be; get)

Answer Key

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 21. are | 24. have forgotten/ will've gone |
| 22. is leaving/ will ask | 25. Unless = if you don't |
| 23. rains/ won't be able to | 26. is/ gets |

2.2. Second Conditional

- The second conditional is also known as unreal/ improbable
- It is to talk about imaginary situations in the if-clause and speculate about their imaginary consequences in the main clause
- We form Type 2 conditionals with if + past; would + V1
- The past tense form doesn't refer to past time
- There is no difference in time between the first and the second conditional sentences.

I.e. Type 2, like type 1, refers to present or future.

- The past tense in the if clause is not a true past but a subjunctive which indicates unreality.

♦ Pattern:

If-clause (If + past)	Main-clause (Would + V1)
--------------------------	-----------------------------

- Note: 'If + Could' is also possible to mean 'was/were able to'

USE

- When the supposition is contrary to known facts:

Example

If I lived near my office, I would be in time for work.
(= But I don't expect I live near my office)

If I were you, I would plant some trees round the house.
(= But I am not you)

- When we don't expect the action in the if-clause to take place:

Example

If a burglar come into my room at night, I'd scream.
(= But I don't expect a burglar to come in)

If I dyed my hair blue, everyone would laugh at me.
(= But I don't intend to dye it)

- We can use Type 2 conditionals in place of type 1 to describe something that is reasonably possible.
(Here, the past tense form doesn't refer to past time)

Example

If you go by train, you will get there earlier.

(Type 1: reasonably possible)

If you went by train, you would get there earlier.

(Type 2: more tentative)

When we describe what is totally 'impossible'

Example

If you had longer legs, you would be able to run faster.

(But you don't have longer legs/ it's impossible to have)

If you could run fast, you would be an Olympic Champion.
(But you can't run fast)

Note: If you could run = if you were able to run

Another Ways of Expressing Type 2 Conditionals

- A. If I were you, I would

- We can use were in place of was after if in all persons.

But 'were' is formal.

- We also prefer were when expressing doubt or imagining something.

Compare

If I was better qualified, I'd apply for the job.
(If I was: less formal)

If I were better qualified, I'd apply for a job.
(If I were: more formal)

How would she be managing if she were running a large company? (Progressive forms)

If I were the Queen of Sheba, you'd be King Solomon.
(were is preferable here)

- ♦ **Note:** We use **if I were you** and **if I were in your position** to give advice (NOT: If I was)

Example

If I were you, I would start some business.

If I were you, I would ask a lawyer for some advice.

- We can also refer to somebody else.

If I were in Getu's position, I'd look for a new job.

(= you should look for a new job)

If I were you/ in your position, I'd accept their offer.

(= you should accept their offer)

- B. If it were not for/ were it not for (NOT: Was)

- This expression explains why something has or hasn't happened

Example

If it weren't for your help, I would still be homeless.

- ♦ **Note:** In formal contexts, **if it were not for** can be expressed as **were it not for**, with the negative in full. (NOT: Weren't it)

Were it not for your help, I would still be homeless.

- ♦ **Note:** 'If it were not for' and 'were it not for' are always followed by the fact that.

Example

Were it not for the fact that you helped me, I'd be homeless.

C. 'If + were to/was to + would'

Instead of an ordinary verb in the simple past, we can use **were** or **was + to-infinitive** in Type 2 conditional clauses.

Example

If I were to/ was to ask, would you help me?

- ♦ **Note:** 'Were to' is more common than 'was to' after I/ he/ she/ it and makes a suggestion sounds more tentative and polite.

Compare

If I asked him, I'm sure he would help us.

Do you think he would?

Well, if I were to ask him nicely.

- ♦ **Note:** We can use **would** in the if-clause (If + would) when we make a request.

If you would like to come this way, the doctor will see you now. (= please come this way = a request)

- ♦ **Note:** We don't use **past tense** or **past perfect** after **would** in main clause (would + V2 or V3 = wrong)

Compare

If we were serious about pollution, we would spent more money on research (wrong).

If we were serious about pollution, we had spent more money on research (right).

If we were serious about pollution, we would spend more money on research (right).

Illustrative Examples

27. Which is in correct?

- A. If I knew her name, I will tell you.
- B. If I would know her name, I'd tell you.
- C. If you asked me, I would tell you.
- D. A and B

Explanations

- In conditional type 2, the if-clause = past simple and the main-clause = would + infinitive without to

Choice (A) = I would tell you✓

If + would is inappropriate unless it expresses a request.

Choice (B) = If I knew✓

Answer: D

28. If I you, I wouldn't buy those mangoes; they don't look ripe.

- A. were B. was C. am D. had been

Explanations

- After **if**, we often use **were** instead of **was** in all types of persons.

- 'Were' is in a formal style and considered more correct.

If I were rich, I'd spend all my time traveling.

If it were raining, I wouldn't go out.

Answer: A

29. If you were the boss, _____?

- A. what will you do C. what do you do
- B. what would you do D. what shall you do

Clues: If + were = past tense

Main clause = would + base verb

Answer: B

30. If you worked harder, you _____ well.

- A. did B. will do C. would do D. do

Clues: In type 2, the main-clause = would + root verb

31. Which conditional structure gives advice? Answer: C
- A. If I were you, I would be more careful.
 B. If I were rich, I would travel everywhere.
 C. If I had a spare ticket, I could take you to the concert.
 D. You would succeed if you tried again.

Explanations

- We can use 'if I were you/ in your position' to give advice.

Example

If I were you, I wouldn't eat too much sweets.
 (= you shouldn't eat too much sweets)

If I were Tigist/ in Tigist's position, I would stop love with him.
 (= she should stop love with him)
 I shouldn't worry if I were you.

32. If you needed a ticket, I could get you one. Answer: A

• The 'main-clause' of this conditional introduces:

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| A. suggestion | C. ability |
| B. offer | D. possibility |
- If you felt like seeing the sights, we could take a bus tour.
 (suggestion)
 - If you took more exercises, you might feel healthier
 (possibility)
 - If it stopped raining, we could go out.
 (ability = would able to go out)

33. Which is correct? Answer: B
- A. If I gave you my address, would you write to me soon?
 B. If I were to give you my address, would you write to me soon?
 C. If I knew your address, I'd send you a post card.
 D. If I were to know your address, I'd send you a post card.

34. If this room was tidy, I could find things. Answer: E
- What does the if-clause mean, in this case?
- A. The room may be tidy.
 B. The room may not be tidy.

- C. The room isn't tidy.
 D. Unknown

Clues: We use type 2 conditionals to talk about imaginary future situation (which improbably/ unlikely happens)
 Answer: C

35. If he killed the man, as the rumour goes, I don't think he _____ here.

- | | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| A. would be | C. will have been |
| B. had been | D. would have been |

Clues: 'If he killed' in the if-clause is past tense, and the main-clause is expected to be would + V1.

Example: If I passed the exam, I would be very happy.

Answer: A

36. If you worked as hard as your friend, _____ you your exams with ease.

- | | |
|---------------|-----------|
| A. would pass | C. passed |
| B. will pass | D. pass |

(See Q35) Answer: A

37. I would come if _____ me.
- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| A. invite | C. have invited |
| B. want to invite | D. were to invite |

Explanations

• Instead of an ordinary verb in the simple past, we can use were + to-infinitive in conditional type 2.

Example

If I asked him, I am sure he would help us.
 (If I were to ask him, I am sure he would help us)

Answer: D

38. If he knew that it is dangerous, he _____.
- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| A. won't come | C. wouldn't come |
| B. might have come | D. mustn't come |

39. If cars _____ with a restricted speed limit, there would be fewer accident on the road. Answer: C

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| A. produced | C. produce |
| B. are produced | D. were produced |

Explanations

- This question has the passive sense although it is about improbable conditional clause. The subject 'cars' is plural, so the plural verb (were) should be used.

40. If I _____ you, I would study hard. Answer: D

- A. were B. had been C. would D. was

Clues: 'were' is preferable in unreal condition in all types of persons

41. If I _____ a bird, I _____ in the air and _____ in a nest. Answer: A

- A. was/ would fly/ lived
B. were/ would fly/ live
C. had had/ would have flown/ lived
D. will be/ will fly/ live

Clues: If I/ she/ he/ it/ you + were to talk about an imaginary situation (which is impossible to happen)

Example

If leaf were money, a monkey would be rich.
(But leaf is not money)

If I were a million aire, I would buy helicopter.
(But I am not a millionaire)

We use a simple verb after 'would'

42. If you were driving from Adama to Nazareth, which way _____? Answer: A

- A. will you go C. do you go
B. can you go D. would you go Answer: D

43. If I _____ a more reliable car, I'd drive to Spain rather than fly.

- A. had B. have C. were D. am

* Had is the past form of have.

44. If you arrived early, we _____ talk about the meeting. Answer: A

- A. could C. can
B. would be able to D. A and B

Explanations

In type 2 conditionals, we can use could to mean 'would be able to'.

Example

If he came, he could help with the dog.
(If he came, he would be able to help with the dog)

Answer: D

- Note: Sometimes we use could twice: once as a past tense (to say that something is not real/ not probable) and once for would be able to.

Example: If I could sell my car, I could buy a computer.

↓
Past tense would be able to

I. Choose the correct verb forms

45. If we _____ (live/ lived) in a town, life would be easier.
46. We _____ (will/ would) phone you if we had time.
47. If she _____ (is/ were) a better dancer, her feet wouldn't hurt.

II. Make sentences using 'If.....were'

48. I/ a rabbit/ live/ in a hole
49. My nose/ shorter/ be quite pretty
50. I/ Moroccan/ speak Arabic

Answer Key

45. lived 48. If I were a rabbit, I'd live in a hole.
46. would 49. If my nose were shorter, I'd be quite pretty.
47. were 50. If I were Moroccan, I'd speak Arabic.

2.3. Third Conditional

(impossible condition)

- Is to talk about things that can now never happen.
- Is to talk about past situations which didn't happen and therefore are impossible.
- If-clause = assume something purely imaginary.
- Main-clause = consider the imagined consequences.
i.e. They refer to something that didn't happen in the past.
They are, therefore, called 'hypothetical conditions'

♦ Pattern:

'If-clause'

Past perfect
(had + V3)

'Main-clause'

Perfect conditional
(would + have + V3)

- ♦ Note: If-clause can use **could have + V3** instead of **had + V3** and the main-clause to mean 'would have been able to'.

Example

Samirawi: How was your camping holiday?

Genet: Well, it would have been all right if it hadn't rained all the time.

Lidiya: If we had gone two weeks earlier, we could have had better weather.

- ♦ Note: If it hadn't rained and if we had gone two weeks earlier are imaginary situations in the past.

It did rain, and they didn't go two weeks earlier.

Possible variations of impossible conditional

A. We can use **could** or **might** in place of **would**.

Example

If he had known the facts, he might have told us what to do. (it was possible) ~ possibility.

If he had known the facts, he could have told us what to do. (he would have been able to)

If our documents had been in order, we could have left us at once. (ability/ permission)

If we had found him earlier, we might have saved his life.

(possibility)

- ♦ Note: **Would have + V3** = when we feel certain/ nearly certain.

Could

Might } + have + V3 = when we don't feel certain

B. The progressive/ continuous forms are possible in the if-clause and/ or main-clause.

Example

If it had been raining this morning, we would have stayed at home.

If I had not got married, I would still have been living

abroad. If I hadn't been wearing one, I d have been seriously injured.

- ♦ Note: Instead of **would have**, we can use **could have** (could have = would have been able to)

Example: If he had run a bit faster, he could have won.
(He could have won = he would have been able to win)

⇒ Impossible condition is mainly used:

A. To express 'Regret'

Example

If I had worked harder at school, I would have got a better job.
(= But I didn't work harder)

If I had done my homework, the teacher would have been pleased with me. (= But I didn't do my homework)

If I had had any sense, I wouldn't have bought a second-hand car (= But I didn't have any sense about)

B. To refer to an imaginary, hoped for situation in the past.

Example

If I had won the pools, life would have been much easier.

If we had had a car, we wouldn't have gone on foot.

C. To refer to a completely impossible situation

Example

If I had lived in the Stone Age, I d have been a hunter
(completely impossible to live then)

⇒ Other structures of type 3

A. If I had been you/ in your position

♦ We often use these expressions to describe a course of action

♦ We would have followed in someone else's position.

Example

If I had been you, I would have accepted her offer.

(If I had been in your position, I d have accepted her offer) (This means: You should have accepted her offer)

- ♦ Note: We can also use these expressions to refer to somebody else.

If I had been Tesfaye, I would have gone there.

B. If it hadn't been for

- ♦ We often use this expression to explain why something didn't

happen in the past.

Example

If it hadn't been for the rain, we'd have had a good harvest

Illustrative Examples

51. If my father _____ meningitis a nurse, he wouldn't have known about

A. had been B. hadn't been C. was D. wasn't

Explanations

- The if-clause of the third conditional introduces past perfect (If + had/ hadn't) and the main-clause presents perfect conditional (would/wouldn't have + V3)

'He wouldn't have known about meningitis' means he knew about because he was a nurse. **Answer: B**

52. Ali didn't study at all, so he failed his exam.

This means:

- A. If I had been Ali, I would have studied for the exam.
B. If I were Ali, I would study my lesson.
C. Ali studied, but he didn't pass his exam.
D. If I am Ali, I will study for my exam.

Explanations

- In conditional type 3, the time is past and the condition can't be fulfilled because the action in the if-clause didn't happen.

Example

If I had been him, I wouldn't have married her.

(This means: He married her, but he shouldn't have married her)
Meseret didn't watch this film, so she didn't know about it.

- ☞ If I had been Meseret, in position of Meseret, I'd have watched this film. **Answer: A**

53. If you had asked me, I'd have told you.

This means:

- A. I told you because you asked me.
B. You asked me that is why I told you.
C. I didn't tell you because you didn't ask me.
D. All are correct.

Clues: Impossible condition expresses the situation which didn't actually happen in the past. **Answer: C**

54. Which is wrong?

- A. If you had told me the truth, I'd have respected you.
B. She wouldn't have broken her arm if she hadn't gone climbing.
C. The team would have won if Shimelis had played better.
D. If Tamirat would have felt better, we had gone swimming.

Explanations

- It is often uncommon to use will, would in if-clause and present/ past verb in main clause.

(See the notes)

Answer: D

55. If you had come to school yesterday, _____

- A. would take C. had taken
B. would have taken D. took the test.

Clues: 'had come' in if-clause is past perfect and the main clause should be introduced by perfect conditional.

(Would have + V3)

Answer: B

56. If anybody _____ I could have told him what happened.

- A. asked C. has asked
B. had asked D. would have asked

Clues: We can use 'could/ should/ might + have' instead of would have in main-clause, but If + would have is not common unless it is about a request.

The question above is not about a request, so a past perfect must be used.

Answer: B

57. Which is correct?

- A. If the weather hadn't been so bad, we might have gone out.
B. If I had been here yesterday, he could have told me.
C. If you had come to the party, you would have met my cousin.
D. All are correct.

Clues: We can express ability, possibility, probability, duty in conditional type 3.

Answer: D

58. If I had married her, I would have been happy.

This means:

- A. I didn't marry her, and I am happy now.
B. I married her, but now I am not happy.

- C. If she agreed to marry me, I'd be happy.
D. I didn't marry her and now I am not happy.

Answer: D

♦ Use the correct form of the verb in bracket and write them into impossible conditional

59. If I (know) you were coming, I (invite) some friends in.
60. It (be) better if you (ask) me for help.
61. You (win) if you (run) a bit faster.
62. The team (win) if Asrat (play) better.
63. You (not catch) cold if you (take) your coat.

Answer Key

59. If I had known, I would have invited
60. It would have been if you had asked
61. You would have won if you had run
62. Would have won if Asrat had played
63. You wouldn't have caught if you had taken

2.4. Inversion in type 2 and type 3 conditional

A. Inversion in type 2 conditional

'Were I you'

(Were + subject + object)

- Inversion is, using a verb before a subject instead of 'if'
- 'were', not was, is used when the auxiliary is placed first
(= We begin a sentence with were, not was)

Example

Were I Abebe, I would refuse the offer.(If I were Abebe, I would refuse the offer)Were the government to cut value added Tax, prices would fail. (Were the government = if the government were)Were Desta to make an effort, he could do better.(Were Desta to make = If Desta were to make)Were it raining, we couldn't go out.

(Were it raining = If it were raining)

'Had I'

Had I a villa house, I would be happy. (had I = if I had)Had she much money, she would go to abroad. (Had she much money = if she had much money)

B. Inversion with 'had' in type 3 conditionals

Had + subject + V3

'Had I had'

Examples

Had I had my lunch earlier, I wouldn't have been tired.

(Had I had = if I had had/ eaten)

Had he known the fact, he wouldn't have married her.

(Had he known = if he had known)

Had the government acted sooner, the strike wouldn't have happened. (Had the government acted = if the government acted)

- ♦ Note: The negative inversion is possible with the full verb.

Example

Had it not been for the usually bad weather, the rescue party would have been able to save the stranded climber.
(NOT: hadn't)

2.5. Implied Conditionals

- Conditionals can be implied.
i.e. not directly introduced by if in a variety of ways.

In type 1

Example

With luck, we'll be there tomorrow.

(= with luck = if we are lucky)

Given time, they'll probably agree.

(= if we give them time)

In type 2

Example

To hear him talk, you would think he was Prime Minister.(= to hear him talk = if you could hear him talk)I would write to her, but I don't know her address.

(= if I knew her address)

In type 3

Example

Without your help, I couldn't have done it.

(= if you hadn't helped me)

In different circumstances, I would have said 'yes'.
(= if circumstances had been different)

2.6. Conjunctions that can sometimes be used in place of 'IF'

A. 'What if'/'say'

- What if/ say can be used in the sense of 'let us suppose'

With type 1

What if = what will happen if?

Example

What if he gets home before us and can't get in?

Say he gets home before us and can't get in.

(what if/ say = what will he do then?)

What if the train is late?

Say the train is late (let us suppose)

(what if = what will happen if?)

What if she loses the way before entering Addis Ababa?

(what if = what will she do if?)

With type 2

What if = what would happen if?

Example

What if/ say you were to run out of money?

(what if = what would you do if?)

What if you failed your Entrance Exam?

(what if = what would you do if?)

What if she didn't marry you?

(= what would you do if she didn't marry you?)

With type 3

What if = what would have happened if?

Example

What if you hadn't reached bus station before 1 o'clock?

(what if = what would have happened if?)

B. 'If so'/'if not'

- We can abbreviate a condition if we begin a new sentence with *if so* or *if not*, or if we continue with 'in which case'.

If so = in that case

Example

Are you free this evening? *If so*, let's go out for a meal.

(*if so* = if you are free)

I might see you tomorrow. *If not*, then it'll be Sunday.

(*if not* = if I don't see you)

He may be busy, in which case I will call later. Or

He may be busy. *If so*, (in that case) I will call later.

(*if so* = if he is busy)

I'll call later. *If not*, can I see him now?

(*If not* = if I don't call later)

- Note: '*If so*' and '*if not*' are used instead of repeating a verb that has already been mentioned.

C. 'But for'

- We often use *but for* + noun to mean:

If it were not for / *if it hadn't been for*

Example

He would have played *but for* a knee injury.

(*but for a knee injury* = if his knee hadn't been injured)

But for my brother's support, I wouldn't have got a job.

(*But for* = if it hadn't been for my brother's)

But for the weather, we would go for a picnic.

(= we are not going for a picnic)

- But for the fact that* + clause

Example

But for the fact that the weather was bad, we would go for a picnic.

2.7. The main differences between type 1, 2 and type 3 Conditionals

Look at the following facts

- The difference between, for example, *if I go ...* and *if I went ...* or *if I speak ...* and *if I spoke ...* is not a difference of time. They can both refer to the present or future.
- The past tense (+ would) usually suggests that the speaker thinks the situation is less probable, or less definite, or impossible, or imaginary.

Compare

If I **become** President, I will reduce corruption.
(said by a candidate in an election)

If I **became** President, I would reduce corruption.
(said by a school boy)

If I **win** the race, I believe that I will earn much money.
(said by the faster runner)

If I **won** the race, I believe that I would earn much money.
(said by the slowest runner)

- ♦ **Note:** In the examples above;

If I **become**, } are more likely to happen
If I **win**, } (there'll be a great chance)

If I **became**, } are less likely to happen
If I **won**, } (there'll be less chance)

If I **had become** President, I would have reduced corruption.
(Impossible to become) – I **didn't become**

If I **had won** the race, I would have earned much money.
(impossible to win) – I **didn't win**

2.8. Expressing 'Regret' and 'Wish'

- ♦ **If only and I wish**

☞ **If only**! and **wish** can be used with **would** and **past tense**.

These structures express **regrets**, and **wishes** for **unlikely or impossible things**.

Example

If only I **knew** more people }
I wish I **knew** more people } 'But I don't know'

I wish I **was** better looking (but I am not)

A. Wish.....Would

- ♦ **Wish/ if only** **would** expresses a wish for something to happen, or to stop happening, or change in some way.

Example

I wish you **would** put those shelves up soon.

Kasahun wishes his neighbours **wouldn't** make so much noise.

If only you **would** try to keep the place tidy.

I wish you **wouldn't** have your hair cut so short.

B. Wish.....Past

- ♦ **Wish/ if only** with a past-tense verb express a wish for things to be different.

☞ **Present wish** = **past form**
(future wish) = **would/ wouldn't**

Example

I wish I **lived** in a big city. It's so boring in the country.
(But I **don't live** in a big city)

I wish I **were** good at physics.
(But I **am not** good at physics)

I wish the hospital **were** nearer my house.
(But it **is not** nearer)

I wish I **could** sing.
(But I **can't**)

- ♦ **Wish** the **past perfect**

☞ We use **wish** and **if only** with the **past perfect** to express a wish about a past.

☞ **Past wish** = **Past perfect form**

Example

I wish I **had studied** harder for the test.
(If only I **had studied** harder for the test)
(But I **didn't study** harder) – **regret**.

- ♦ **Note 1:** We don't use **would have** for the past, but we can use **could have**.

Example: I wish I **could have been** at the wedding, but I was in Nazareth.

- ♦ **Note 2:** We use **if only** in the same way as **wish** to express regrets/wishes. But '**if only**' is stronger and more emphatic than **wish**.

- ♦ **Were** is always used instead of **was**. It is more formal.

Examples

I wish I **were** taller. }
If only I **were** taller. } 'But I **am not**'

- ♦ Compare **wish** with **would** and with the **past**.
I **wish** something exciting **would** happen.
(I wish for an action in the future)
I wish my life **were** more interesting.

(My life is not interesting)

Generally:

- If only/ wish would

Example: Somebody will not stop talking. (future)

☞ I wish/ if only he would stop talking.

- If only/ wish Past tense

Example: She doesn't love me. (present)

☞ I wish/ if only she loved me

- If only/ wish..... prefer

Example: My brother didn't pass the interview. (past)

☞ I wish/ if only he had passed the interview.

Our English teacher transferred to another school (past)

☞ I wish/ if only he hadn't transferred.

Illustrative Examples

64. _____ I you, I would ask a lawyer for some advice.

- A. Were B. Had C. Am D. Been

Explanations

- This question is about **inversion** with conditional type 2
- **Inversion** means using a verb before a subject (at the beginning of the if-clause, so we say it is 'inverted')

Example

Were I bird, I would fly.

(If I were a bird, I would fly)

Were I a millionaire, I would buy helicopter.

(If were a millionaire, I would buy helicopter)

- ♦ **Note:** Were I/ If I were presents unlikely/ imaginary condition.
No inversion in conditional type 1. Answer: A

65. _____ a motorbike, I would reach before lunch.

- A. If I had C. If I have
B. Had I D. A and B

Clues: The second conditional can be inverted in two ways:

- { With verb to be (were I.....)
- { With possessive verb (Had I.....)

Had I = If I had

Example

Had I a lot of money, I wouldn't live in rent house.

(If I had a lot of money, I wouldn't live in rent house)

Answer: D

66. _____ hungry, I would have eaten something.

- A. If I had been C. Were I
B. Had I been D. A and B

Explanations

- We can also use '**inversion**' in type 3 conditionals.

Had + I + V3 = had I had = If I had had
(had I been)

Example

Had I been you, I wouldn't marry her.

(If I had been you, I wouldn't marry her.)

Had I been you } If I had been in your position
If I had been you }

Answer: D

67. _____ the rain we could go to the match.

- A. If only C. What if
B. But for D. I wish

Explanations

- We can use some conjunctions instead '**IF**' to express conditional sentences.

- For example, '**but for**' to say:

If it were not for (in unlikely conditionals)

If it hadn't been for (in impossible conditionals)

Example

1. But for his help, I would be hurt.

If it weren't for his help, I would be hurt. } type 2
Were it not for his help, I would be hurt. }

2. But for my umbrella, I would have got completely wet.

☞ If it had not been for my umbrella, I d have got completely wet.

But for my headache, I d have passed my exam.

☞ If it hadn't been for my headache, I d have passed my exam.

(number 2 expresses type 3)

Answer: B

- ♦ **Note:** But for can be used with the fact that + clause
 But for the fact that I can't play the guitar, I'd be in a band.
 But for the fact that I had a headache, I'd have passed my exam.

68. If only I had done my homework last night.

☞ This is the same as:

- A. I don't do my homework.
 B. I don't want to do my homework.
 C. I wouldn't do my homework.
 D. I didn't do my homework.

Explanations

- 'If only' and 'I wish' are to mean the same although if only is more emphatic than I wish.

- Past tense is used to talk about present wish/ regret.
- Past perfect is used to talk about past wish/ regret.

Example

I wish/ if only our teacher hadn't given us so much home work.

(But he did/ he gave us so much home work)

I wish/ if only I were good at physics.

(But I am not good)

Answer: D

69. I can't play a musical instrument. But I wish _____.

- A. I can C. I did
 B. I could D. I would

Example: I can't dance. But I wish I could.

Answer: B

70. _____, I would have accepted their offer.

- A. If I had been you C. If I had been in your position
 B. Had I been you D. All

(See Q 66)

Answer: D

71. _____ you win DV lottery?

- A. I wish B. If C. What if D. But for

Explanations

- We can use what if to say what will happen if (in type 1), what would happen if (in type 2) and what would have happened if (in type 3).

What if = say/ let's suppose.

Example

What if you hear gun sound around you?

(what will you do if?) – type 1

What if you heard gun sound around you?

(what would you do if?) – type 2

What if you had heard gun sound around you?

(what would have you done if?) – type 3

What if you win = say/ let's suppose you win Answer: C

72. Is the teacher coming? _____ let's get ready for lesson.

- A. If so C. If only
 B. what if D. I wish

Explanations

- We use if so instead of an affirmative sentence.

if so means in that case.

Example

Are you free this morning? If so, let's go out for a picnic.

(If so = If you are free)

She may be busy. If so, I'll call her later.

(If so = if she is busy)

Answer: A

73. Please, contact me soon. _____, you won't get me.

- A. If so B. Then C. But for D. If not

Clues: We can use 'if not' in place of a negative statement in conditional clause.

Example

If you invite me, I'll go with you. If not, I would rather didn't. (If not = if you don't offer me)

Answer: D

74. Which is wrong?

- A. If it hadn't been for Agar, I don't know what I'd have done.
 B. But for Agar, I don't know what I'd have done.
 C. If it weren't for Agar, I don't know what would I do.
 D. If Agar hadn't been for, I don't know what I would have done.

(See Q66 & 70) Answer: D

75. If I had studied hard, I wouldn't have failed the exam.

☞ The other way to express the clauses above is/ are:

- A. I failed the exam because I didn't study harder.
 B. I wish I had studied harder.
 C. If only I had studied harder.
 D. All are correct

Clues: Conditional type 3 is always about regret (something which we can never get back)

Example

If I had used this way, I wouldn't have got all these accidents.

This means: The speaker didn't use that way, so he/ she got accidents.

: He/ she wishes he/she had used that way.

: If only he/ she had used that way

Answer: D

- Put in 'were I, Had I had, But for, what if, if so, if not, if only/ I wish', where necessary

76. _____ me lived in the same town.
77. _____ rich, I would help the poor.
78. _____ the war breaks out in your village?
79. _____ my jacket, I'd have felt cold.
80. Would you like some food? _____ let go for 'Kitifa'.
81. _____ my breakfast on time, I would have felt stronger.
82. Have you got your lunch yet? _____ I'll get you soon.
83. If I come late one more time, my teacher _____ not let me in. (EUEE 2007)

- A. wouldn't C. will not
B. doesn't D. is not

Clue: In conditional type 1 (probable/ likely) condition, use simple present in if-clause, and will + present tense (will + v1) in main-clause. **Answer: C**

Note: But for something which is always happening (habitual action), we can use only simple present in the main clause, so 'B-does' is possible in this case.

84. She _____ if that happened to her again. (EUEE 2007)
A. cries C. would cry
B. will cry D. would have cried

Clue: In conditional type (improbable/ unlikely) condition, use simple past (If + V2) in if-clause, and would + infinitive in main-clause. (See the notes) **Answer: C**

85. Had they sought assistance, we _____ sent out life savers. We don't _____ understand why they choose to keep silent. (EUEE 2007)
A. had C. will have
B. have D. would have

Clue: In impossible (conditional type 3), use past perfect (If + had + V3) in if-clause, and perfect conditional (would have + V3) in Main-clause.

In inversion, 'had' is used instead of 'if'.
• Had I had (eaten) my breakfast, I would have felt stronger.

(See Q 66, 70) **Answer: D**

76. I wish/ if only 79. But for 82. If not
77. Were I 80. If so
78. What if 81. Had I had

Key

3. DEGREES OF COMPARISON

☞ Every adjective has three Degrees of comparison.

1. Positive Degree
2. Comparative Degree
3. Superlative Degree

3.1. Positive Degree (no comparison)

- Is also known as simple degree.
- Is an adjective used to talk about the quality of a person, thing or place is known as positive degree.

Example: Clever, brave, beautiful, handsome, wealthy, healthy, fat, sad, poor, rich, etc.

Example: She is a **beautiful** girl.

He is a **brave** man.

Mamush is a **healthy** child.

She sings **beautifully**.

- **Note:** No comparison is made in the examples above. Adjectives (**beautiful, brave and healthy**) before nouns (**girl, man and child**) are modifying/ qualifying these nouns.

Constructions with positive degree

A. as As

- Is used to indicate the same degree.
- Is used to say that people or things are equal in some ways.
- Can be used with adjective or adverb to say that something or someone is like something, or someone else or that one situation is like another.
- It is always used with an affirmative statement.

☞ Pattern:

as + adjective/ adverb + as

With adverb

Example

She plays the guitar as beautifully as she sings.

He came round to my flat as quickly as he could.

He speaks English as fluently as English man.

Can a man run as fast as a horse?

- **Note:** We can use object pronouns (me, him, etc) after 'as' especially in an informal way/ style.

Example

She doesn't sing as well as me.

In a formal style, we use subject + verb

Example

She doesn't sing as well as I do.

With adjective

Example

Kasahun is as tall as his brother. (they are equal in height)

Betty is as intelligent as Hana. (Both are intelligent)

Was the film as funny as the last one?

(are they equally funny?)

Our house is as big as yours. (They are the same size)

{ The man is old. }
{ The woman is old. }

☞ These are the same as: The woman is as old as the man.

(They are the same age)

- **Note:** as as can be used both with a short and a long adjective.

With much and many to talk about quantities

☞ as much as = for uncountable nouns

Example

She earns as much money as Abebe.

We need as much time as possible.

I haven't had as much food as I wanted.

☛ **as many as** = with countable nouns

Example

They need **as many** cars as possible.

The company needs **as many** people as possible.

- ♦ **Note:** As much/ as many can be used without a noun

Example

I ate **as much** as I wanted.

Rest **as much** as possible.

'Can I borrow some books?'

Yes, **as many** as you like.

☛ **half asas, twice as as, three times as**

Example

She earns **twice as much** money as me/ as I do.

The green one is not **half as good** as the blue one.

A colour TV is **three times expensive** as a black and white.

Their house is about **three times as big** as ours.

Some colourful and unusual comparisons with 'as.....as' (simple)

Example

as slow as a broken down snail.

as dark as the inside of a wolf.

as cold as ice.

- ♦ **Note:** If you put a countable noun between the adjective and the second as, you should use a/ an in front of the noun (if the noun is singular)

Example

Despite his disability, he tried to lead **as normal a life** as possible.
She was **as patient a teacher** as anyone could have had.

B. No so..... As/ Not as

- Used to indicate lower degree
- We can use either as or so after **not** to compare two people, things, etc.
- Used with a negative sentence
- ♦ **Pattern:**

Not so/as + adjective + as

Example

He is not so/ as successful as his father.

Man's laughter is not as/ so bad as murder.

He is not so/ as clever as her.

It is warmer today. It is not so/as cold as yesterday.

- ♦ **Note:** In formal speech and writing it is more common to use **less than** instead of **not so/as** as

Example

The gap between the sides is not as wide as it was.

(The gap between the sides is **less than** it was)

The bees are plenty, but not so common as last summer.

(..... but **less common than** last summer) He is not as/ so good as expected.

(He is **less than** I expected)

- ♦ **Note:** 'So as' is not used with an affirmative word.

Example

My phone is **so loud** as yours. (**wrong**)

My phone is **as loud** as yours. (**right**)

But My phone is **not so/ as loud** as yours. (**correct**)

My phone is **less loud than** yours. (**correct**)

- ♦ **Note:** The negative form of sentence like this can use **not as** or sometimes **not such**.

Example

He is not as good a player as he used to be.

He is not such a good player as he used to be.

They are not such terrible children as we had expected.

(we don't use **not as** with plural nouns)

He is not such a hard worker as his brother.

C. The same as

- Note that 'as' follows the same.

Example

He is angry because my marks are **the same** as his.

He went to **the same** school as me/ as I did.

D. Nearly as..... as

Example

Nearly as many girls went to secondary school in 2007 **as** in 2006.
Faris is **nearly as** tall as his father now.

Illustrative Examples

1. This car and that car are equally fast.

☞ This can be expressed:

- A. This car is **as fast as** that car.
 B. That car is **as fast as** that car.
 C. This car is **so fast as** that car.
 D. A and B

Clues: We use **as** **as** structure to say that two things, persons, actions, etc. are the same in certain qualities.

Example

The blouse is **clean**. The skirt is **clean**.

☞ The blouse is **as clean as** the skirt.

(The blouse and the skirt are equally clean) **Answer: D**

- ♦ **Note:** **So** **as** is only used in a negative sentence, not with a positive/ affirmative statement.

2. X costs birr 5,000. Y costs birr 10,000

☞ This is the same as:

- A. X is not **so expensive as** Y.
 B. X is **less expensive than** Y.
 C. X is not **as expensive as** Y.
 D. All are correct.

Clues: In a formal style, we can use **less** **than** instead of **not so** **as** to express things or people aren't equal in some qualities.

And **not as** **as** can be used instead of **not so** **as**

Answer: D

3. Which is wrong?

- A. The flowers are **as pretty as** the jewels.
 B. The tree is not **so small as** the pole.
 C. She is **so attractive as** her mother.
 D. Radio is **less cheap than** Television.

Clues: '**so** **as**' can't be used with an affirmative sentence.

Answer: B

4. My student speaks English _____ fluently as any Englishman.

- A. more B. less C. most D. as

Clues: **as + adverb + as**. (**less/ more/ most + as = wrong**)
Answer: D

5. Our school needs _____ possible this year.
 A. as many students as C. as much students as
 B. so many student as D. as more students as

Explanations

• We use **as much as/ as many as** or **as little as/ as few as** to say that a quantity or amount is larger or smaller than expected.

many and few are used before **numbers**.

much and little are used with **amounts**.

Many: He used to smoke **as many as 30 cigarettes** a day.

Much: I don't earn **as much money as** I would like.

The company needs **as many workers as possible**.

Answer: A

6. Selam is as tall as Betty. _____
 A. if not tall C. if not taller
 B. if not so taller D. if not as taller

Explanations

The words **than** or **as** are required after the first modifier in a compound comparison.

Hassen had **as much** reason to be optimistic **as** I did, **if not more**.

Your chances of getting into a good college are **as good as** Martha's, **if not better**.

Answer: C

7. Abel went to _____ school _____ Tigist.
 A. so/ as C. less/ than
 B. as/ as D. the same/ as

Clues: We can use **the same** before **as** to express that things are equal.

Example

The result of the match was **the same as** last year.

Answer: D

8. We can't do cross words _____ you do.
 A. as quick as C. so quickly as
 B. as quickly as D. so quick as

Clues: Adverbs modify a verb (action), for this reason, **as + adverb + as**.

Example: She sings **as beautifully as** her sister. **Answer: B**

1. Complete these sentences with **as much as, as many as, as little as, or as few as**.
9. I used to smoke _____ 50 cigarettes a day.
10. He doesn't play golf now _____ he used to.
11. It was disappointing that _____ 200 delegates came to the conference.
12. It is still possible to pay _____ £5 for a good meal at some restaurants in the city.
13. At the busiest times, _____ 50 planes land at the airport every hour.
14. I sometimes have to spend _____ £ 30 a day on rail fares.
- II. Complete these sentences with **as as/ not as/so as, not such as**
15. It is _____ I've ever read in a newspaper. (intelligent/ article)
16. It is _____ I'd imagined (not/ beautiful/ house)
17. They are _____ in the last school I worked at. (not/ well-behaved/ children)
18. Mr. Truworth is _____ his predecessor was. (not/ popular/ president)
19. The new motorway is _____ it is in the countryside. (not/ major/issue town)
20. Since her accident, Mary's tried to lead _____ possible. (normal/life)

Answer Key

9. as many as 15. as intelligent an article as
 10. as much as 16. not as beautiful a house as/ not such a beautiful house as
 11. as few as 17. not such well-behaved children as
 12. as little as 18. not as popular a president as/ not such a popular president as
 13. as many as 19. not as major an issue in the town as/ not such a major issue in the town as
 14. as much as 20. as normal a life as

3.2. Comparative Degree

- Is used to compare two things/ persons in certain qualities.

Example

- clever than - better than
 - more beautiful than - fatter than
 - wealthier than - heavier than

Taye is wealthier than his brother.
 Chala is more handsome than Tolosa.
 He is braver than his father.

- ♦ Note: 'than' is always added in the comparative degree.

3.2.1. Structures with Comparative Degree

The comparative form of adjectives is made in two ways:

- A. Most adjectives of one syllable and a few adjectives with two, add er to form the comparative.

Example

Positive	Comparative
hard	harder
wise	wiser
fat	fatter
larger	large
long	longer
mighty	mightier
happy	happier
heavy	heavier

- ♦ Note: Adjectives ending in 'y' are always two syllable and 'y' is changed into 'i' and followed by 'er'.

- B. Most adjectives with two syllable and all adjectives with more than two syllable (polysyllabic adjectives) use more or less to make their comparative form.

Example

Positive	Comparative
hopeful	more hopeful
cautious	more cautious
comfortable	more comfortable
interesting	less interesting

3.2.2. Adverbs in Comparison

- Like adjectives, adverbs have comparative and superlative forms.
- The comparative form is made in two ways.
 - A. Most adverbs of one syllable form the comparative by adding '-er'.

Example

The team worked **harder** to day than yesterday.
 Mesay practiced his dance routine **longer** than Hana.
 Dawit drives **faster** than anyone I know.

- Note: **harder, longer** and **faster** are comparative adverbs.

- B. Most adverbs ending in '-ly' form the comparative with 'more/less'.

Example

Please speak **more** slowly.
 Fikiru proofreads **more** carefully than Yosef.

The second window opened **less** easily.
 The rain cleared **more** quickly than I expected.
 Don't drive **less** carefully.

- Note: **Carefully, slowly, easily** and **quickly** are comparative adverbs.

3.2.3. Irregular forms of Comparative

A. Irregular Comparison Using Adjectives

They are made by changing the words themselves.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
good	better	best
well	better	best
bad	worse	worst
ill	worse	worst
little	less/ lesser	least
much	more	most
far	farther/ further	farthest
many	more	furthest

B. Irregular Comparison Using Adverbs

A few adverbs have irregular comparative and superlative forms.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
well	better	best
much	more	most
little	less	least
late	later	latest, last
	further	farthest
	further	furthest
far		
fore	former	foremost (first)

C. Other irregular forms

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
fore	further	furthest
in	inner	innermost, inmost
up	upper	uppermost, upmost
top	topper	topmost, toppest
hind	hinder	hindmost, hindermost
out	outer	outermost

3.2.4. Parallel Comparative

(the more, the more)-to show parallel increase /decrease

- We use this structure to say that things **change** or **vary** together.
- It is used to show cause and effect (when one change is made, another follows) – a change in one thing goes with a change in another.

- Pattern:

the + comparative, the + comparative

The more + subject + verb

Example

The older I get, the happier I am.

The more dangerous it is, the more I like it.

The more money he has, the more useless things he buys.

Are you looking for a cheap holiday? – Yes, the cheaper the better.

- Note: A comma is used between the two comparatives we don't use another comparative after the more.

i.e. The more + er = wrong
Compare

The more higher the price, the more reliable the product (wrong)
The higher the price, the more reliable the product (right).

The more sooner we leave, the sooner we'll get there (wrong)
The sooner we leave, the sooner we'll get there (right).

♦ Note: We can use the less, the less (to show parallel decrease)

Example

The less you study, the less confidence you feel.

The less she dances, the less energy she loses.

The more expensive petrol becomes, the less people drive.

3.2.5. Progressive Comparative

(more and more/ -er and -er)

- This pattern is also known as double comparative.
- Used to say that things are changing all the time.
- Both constructions or comparatives are joined by 'and'.
- Express gradual increase or decrease.
- Participles like becoming/ getting/ growing are used with it.

Example

The weather is getting colder and colder.

He becomes less and less interested.

We went more and more slowly (adverb)

Debele is growing fast. He is getting taller and taller.

Computers are becoming more and more complicated.

Holiday flights are getting less and less expensive.

♦ Note: 'More and more' and 'less and less' don't normally combine with one-syllable adjectives.

(i.e. more + -er/ less + -er is a wrong usage)

Compare

He is growing more fatter and more fatter. (wrong)

He is growing fatter and fatter. (right)

She is getting more and more wiser. (wrong)

She is getting wiser and wiser. (right)

3.2.6. Illogical Comparative

(Than any other and than all other, else)

- The word other, or the word else, is required in comparisons of an individual member with the rest of the group.
- When we compare two things, the compared thing must be excluded.

A. Any other

- Any other + singular noun

Example

Mesert is more beautiful than any other girl.

Elias is taller than any other boy in the class.

Our team has scored more points than any other team in the league.

Mathematics is more useful than any other subject.

Our room is wider than any room in this block.

(wrong: our room is even wider than itself)

'any' should be followed by 'other'

B. all other

- All other + plural noun

Example

India was poorer than all other countries.

Cheetah is faster than all other animals.

Our kebele is tidier than all other kebels.

C. 'else'

We use 'else' after indefinite pronouns such as anyone, anything, someone, anybody, etc.

Example

Helen is as talented as anyone else in her class.

I am more interested in sport than anything else in my life.

3.2.7. Than me/ than I am

Compare than me and than I am. Both are correct and they have the same meaning

You are twenty years older than me.

You are twenty years older than I am.

You are taller than me (NOT: than I)

He is not as clever as her (NOT: as she)

Seble's husband is not as tall as her.

Her husband is not as tall as she is.

- ♦ **Note:** After than/ as it is more usual to say me/ him/ her/ them/ us when there is no verb.

Compare

You are taller than I am but you are taller than me.

They have more money than we have but they've more money than us.

I can't run as fast as he can but I can't run as fast as him.

3.2.8. The Omission of 'than' in Comparative

A comparative can stand on its own if the reference is clear.

Example

The grey coat is longer.

The weather today is better.

I like them both, but Tigist is the nicer of the two.

- ♦ **Note:** We can use 'the' before a comparative in formal style.

If the same kinds of two things or persons are compared.

Which is (the) longer? (of the two coats)

The grey coat is (the) longer (of the two coats). Whose

laptop is the smaller, mine or yours?

Mine is the smaller.

3.2.9. Modification of Comparative

We can use intensifier and adverbs of degree like very, too, quite to modify adjectives.

Example: very tall, too cold, quite hot, etc. However, we can't use these intensifiers with the comparative. Instead, we use much, very much, far, a little, a bit (informal), no and even.

Example

It is much/ far/ a lot/ a little colder today than it was yesterday.

Houses are much/ far/ a lot more expensive these days.

There have been many more/ many fewer burglaries this year.

The train is no quicker than the bus.

He is much/ far older than her (NOT: he is very older)

I feel a little/ a bit better.

She is very much happier in the new job.

- ♦ **Note:** Even and all the can often be used interchangeably for emphasis in front of more, especially with -ed/ -ing adjectival participles.

Example

You look even more beautiful than usual.

This term his behavior has become even more annoying.

When I told her news, she became all the more depressed.

3.2.10. 'More than', 'less than', and 'worse than' + adjective

More than, less than and worse than can be used in front of a number of adjective in the following ways:

I was more than pleased with my pay rise. I was over the moon.

This foot-pump is worse than useless.

- ♦ **Note:** 'More' in comparison of relative quantity.

More is used with countables and uncountables.

Example

More food is wasted than is eaten in this canteen.

More children go to school now than they did in 2006.

- ♦ **Note:** 'less' can also be used to compare quantities.

Example

Meskerem spends less on clothes than Hayat does.

There is less illiteracy now than there was in 2004.

More and less are the opposite of most and least.

3.2.11. Fewer/ less/ lesser

Fewer is used to describe things that can be counted.
(countable nouns)

Example

There are fewer people here today than there were yesterday.

I have fewer problems now than I had before.

Less/ lesser: Both have the same meaning but 'less' is commoner than 'lesser'.

Both are used to mean small in quantity.

(They refer to quantity or degree)

Are always used with uncountable noun. Are irregular adjectives.

Example

A shower provides less water than a bath.

The lamp gives less light than the other one.

There is less snow today than yesterday.

Mocadisho has lesser attraction than Addis Ababa.

She paid me lesser amount than I expected.

3.2.12. Later and latter

Later: Indicates time. Is irregular comparative.

She came later than I thought.

He was married later than his sister.

She got to school later than I did.

Latter: Indicates position. It refers to order and means the second of two things/ people just mentioned.

Example

His latter novels are very dull.

Alexandria and Cairo are large cities.

The latter has a population of over a million.

(The latter means Cairo = the 2nd of the two)

⚡ **Note:** 'latter' is the opposite of former.

('Former' means the first of the two)

3.2.13. Elder/ older

Elder: Is used only for persons and for the members of the same family.

'Elder' is not used with 'than'

Is irregular comparative.

Is used with brother, sister, son, daughter, grandson, granddaughter.

Example

Dula is my elder brother. (I have one brother older than me)

Zenebech is my elder sister (I've more than one sister)

She has an elder sister.

My elder brother is called Worku.

Older: Is used both for persons and things.

Is followed by than.

Is irregular comparative.

Example

Alemayehu is older than me.

This painting is older than that.

3.2.14. Farther/ further

Farther: Is only used to talk about distance.

Is an irregular comparative.

Example

I live a bit farther away than you.

She lives three miles away from the office than me.

My house is farther than yours.

Further: On one hand it refers to 'distance' and on the other hand it refers to 'in addition to'

Example

She lives 3 miles farther/ further from the office than me.

I applied to the principal for further details (NOT: farther)

(Further = additional)

We say: further education (NOT: farther)

further information (NOT: farther)

further discussion (NOT: farther)

further details (NOT: farther)

3.2.15. Some more polysyllabic adjectives

('full, ive, ing and ed' ending adjectives)

More and less are used before these adjectives.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
powerful	{ more powerful less powerful }	{ the most powerful the least powerful }
useful	{ less use ful more careful }	{ the most useful the least use ful }
careful	{ more careful less careful }	{ the most careful the least careful }
attractive	{ more attractive less attractive }	{ the most attractive the least attractive }
active	{ more active less active }	{ the most active the least active }
int eresting	{ more int eresting less int eresting }	{ the most int eresting the least int eresting }
shocking	{ more shocking less shocking }	{ the most shocking the least shocking }
exciting	{ more exciting less exciting }	{ the most exciting the least tired }
tired	{ more tired less tired }	{ the most tired the least tired }
pleased	{ more pleased less pleased }	{ the most pleased the least pleased }

- ♦ **Note:** Most one-syllable and a few two-syllable adjectives (especially the 'y' ending) form their comparative forms by adding -er/ -r/ -ier to their simple adjective

short - shorter	thick - thicker	healthy - healthier	easy - easier
large - larger	bad - badder	heavy - heavier	busy - busier
rich - richer	wise - wiser	lazy - lazier	happy - happier
big - bigger	kind - kinder	pretty - prettier	noisy - noisier
fine - finer	fat - fatter	hungry - hungrier	

Illustrative Examples

21. Sport is _____ than politics.
 A. interesting C. more interesting
 B. the most interesting D. as interesting

Explanations

- Comparative degree is used to compare two things/ people.
- 'than' is used after a comparative adjective.
- 'Interesting' is four-syllable adjective, so 'more' should be used before it. **Answer: C**

- ♦ **Note:** We can also use not as/ so ... as structure in the question above as:

- Politics is not as/ so interesting as sport.
- Politics is less interesting than sport.

22. I found this year's Great Ethiopian Run _____ last year's.
 A. as interested as C. most interesting of
 B. more interesting than D. not interesting than
 (See Q21 above) **Answer: B**

23. Which team is _____, Tanzania or Zanzibar?
 A. weakest C. the weakest
 B. weaker D. weak

Explanations

We can leave out the conjunctions 'than' when the meaning/ the comparison is clear.

Example

Daniel: Kuma is tall, what about Habtamu?

Dagne: He is **taller**. (NOT: He is taller than Kuma)

Which is **cheaper**, TV or laptop?

Which is **farther**, Dessie or Bahir Dar?

Answer: B

24. The test we had yesterday was difficult, but the one we had last week was _____.
 A. most difficult C. difficult
 B. the more difficult D. more difficult
Clues: 'difficult' is a longer adjective, so **more** is used before it to make a comparative form. **Answer: D**

25. Which is wrong?
 A. Alemu runs **faster than** Bonsa.
 B. We have **as much time as** anyone else has.

- C. Who is **old**, mother or father?
 D. There are **more** sailboats in the harbor today than was yesterday.

Clues: When we ask a question about a comparison between two things, we should use a comparative adjective.

(See Q23) Answer: C

26. Strawberry and Chocolate are my favourite flavours, but I think chocolate is of the two.

- A. the nicest
 B. the nicer
 C. nicer
 D. so nicer

Explanations

If two things of exactly the same kind are being compared we can use **the** before a comparative in a formal style.

Example

The white T-shirt is **shorter**.

Which is **the shorter**? (of the two T-shirt)

The white T-shirt is **the shorter** (of the two T-shirts)

27. Which is **correct**?

- A. He is **more happier** than ever.
 B. Lema is not so **clever than** Bayu.
 C. Adama is as more attractive as Bishoftu.
 D. You are more stubborn than anybody else I know.

Clues: We can't use a double comparison together.

More + -er is a wrong usage.

In option A: drop '**more**' (happier than ✓)

In option B: so than = a wrong usage.

(..... not so clever as ✓)

In option C: more is a wrong usage (more than ✓)

28. Which is **wrong**?

- A. My grandmother can run twice as fast as you.
 B. My grandmother can run twice faster than you.
 C. I can run three times as fast as you.
 D. I can run three times faster than you.

Clues: We can use these structures: half as as/
 twice as as/ three times as as/
 three times + er + than

✗ But we don't use twice with a comparative form.

Answer: D

- Our house is **twice bigger** than yours. (wrong)
 Our house is **twice as big** as yours. (right)
 Our house is **three time** as big as yours. (right)
 Our house is **three times bigger** than yours. (right)
 She earns **twice as much** money as me. (right)

Answer: B

29. The more money she has, _____ she wants.
 A. the more
 B. the much more
 C. more
 D. as more

Clues: We use **the more, the more/ the + -er, the + -er** to say that things change or vary together.

Example

The **warmer** it gets, the **happier** I am.

Note: The correct order in this structure should be:

The + comparative + subject + verb Answer: A

30. You work hard, you sleep well.

→ This is the same as:

- A. The more hard you work, the well you sleep.
 B. The more harder you work, the more you sleep.
 C. The worker you are, the better you sleep.
 D. The harder you work, the better you sleep.

Explanations

- One syllable adjectives make their comparative form by adding **-r/er** and two-syllable adjectives (especially 'y' ending) form their comparative by adding **-ier**.

- Note:** 'y' is changed into **-i**.

Irregular adjectives don't add **-er**.

little → less → least

many } → more → most
 much }

bad } → worse → worst
 badly }

Example

You do **little**, you get **lazy**.

✗ The **less** you do, the **fazier** you get.

The problems are **bad**, you feel **unhappy**.

- The worse the problems are, the **unhappier** you feel.
You get **much** money, you waste **much**.
• The more money you get, the **more** you waste.

Note: The adjectives **little**, **bad** and **much** are irregular, and their comparative forms are **less**, **worse** and **more** respectively.

31. _____ it is, the more I like it.

- A. The more dangerous C. The most dangerous
B. The much dangerous D. More dangerous

(See Q30) Answer: A

32. This was than it was last year. I paid only birr 100 to get it.

- A. much less expensive C. much expensive
B. much more expensive D. much most expensive

Explanations

This is about modification of comparatives. To modify a comparison, we use words **very much**, **much**, **far**, **even**, **little**, **a lot**, **lots**, **rather**, etc. before **more**, **fewer**, adjective + **er** (e.g. a little colder, a lot, sweeter ...)

Example

She is **very much** happier in the new job.

These grapes are **a lot** sweeter than the others.

Answer: A

33. I haven't seen it, but I could imagine that the Renaissance Dam is _____ than any other dam we have in the country.

- A. very bigger C. much bigger
B. absolutely bigger D. more bigger

(See Q32) Answer: C

34. Turn the page for _____ instruction.

- A. further B. farther C. more D. much

Explanations

Use **further** to mean both **greater distance** and **more of something**.

Use **farther** only for **distance**.

Compare

I live a bit **farther/ further** away than you.

(Don't use it to mean **more**, here)

We need **further** explanation for this lesson. (NOT: farther)

• **'Further'** in this example is to mean **more/ additional**

Answer: A

35. They have _____ books than I have.
A. less B. many C. fewer D. any

Explanations

Less: denotes amount, quantity, value, or degree.

Fewer: denotes numbers.

Example

We may have **less** water, **less** food, **less** money, **less** education.

But we say: We have **fewer** books, **fewer** letters, **fewer** friends.

Answer: C

36. Your accent is _____ than mine.

- A. badder C. worser
B. worse D. best

Clues: The irregular form of **bad** is **worse**, not **badder**.

This year's weather is **worse** than the last year's.

Answer: B

37. I feel a little/ a bit _____.

- A. better C. best
B. good D. gooder

Answer: A

38. Addis Ababa is nicer _____ city in Africa.

- A. than any other C. so than
B. than all other D. of the

Explanations

We use **than any other** + **singular noun** to compare two things or persons. When two things or persons are compared, the one thing must be excluded from the other thing compared.

Example

Football is **more interesting** than any other sports.

Answer: A

* Note: The word **'other'** is not left out because, if we say: Football is more interesting **than any** sport, this means **football** is more interesting **than football**. But it is meaningless because **football** is included in all other sports.

39. Basha is _____ me.

- A. elder than C. older than
B. elder as D. old than

Clues: **older** is followed by **than**, but not **elder**.

(elder + brother/ sister....)

Example

His **elder** brother is called Motuma. (NOT: older)
 Habtamu is **older** than Melese (NOT: elder than)

40. Today, the weather is getting _____ Answer: C
 A. bad and bad C. more bad and more bad
 B. badder and badder D. worse and worse

Explanations

- We use **more & more/ -er and -er** to say that things are changing.

Example

It is getting **colder and colder**.
 We went **more and more** slowly.
 His driving is getting **more and more** dangerous.
 She is growing **fatter and fatter**.
 His health is becoming **worse and worse**.

Answer: C

- ♦ **Note:** We don't use **more/ less + -er** together.

Compare

He is growing **more and more** taller. (wrong)
 He is growing **more taller and more** taller. (wrong)
 The workers are getting **less happier and less** happier. (wrong)
 Their results are becoming **more better and more** better. (wrong)
 He is growing **taller and taller**. (right)
 The workers are getting **unhappier and unhappier**. (right)
 Their results are becoming **better and better**. (right)

40. The Taj Mahal _____ than the White House.
 A. much older C. many older
 B. more older D. much old
 (See Q 32 & 33) Answer: A

41. Engidashet speaks English _____ me.
 A. as good as C. good than
 B. better as D. better than

Clues: 'better' is the comparative form of **good**.

It is irregular comparative.

We don't say: **gooder** → **goodest**

Example

'Doro Wet' is **goodder** than 'Kitifo'. (wrong)

'Doro Wet' is **better** than 'Kitifo'. (right)
Better should be followed by **than**.

Answer: D

Review Exercise

I. Right or wrong?

42. During my first dance class, I felt **less** graceful than an injured elephant. []
 43. It is better to give than receive. []
 44. Today is hotter as yesterday. []
 45. **More** it is dangerous, **more** I like it. []
 46. Can you drive a bit **slower**, please? []
 47. He is **more** lazy than stupid. []
 48. My result is getting **better and better**. []

II. Use the correct form of the comparative enclosed in the brackets.

49. Boyoso is my _____ brother. (old)
 50. 'My computer keeps crashing.' Get a _____ computer. (good)
 51. The doctors don't know what's wrong, so they're going to do _____ tests. (far)
 52. We have got money than Abiy and Tariku, but we are _____ (little, happy)
 53. My cold was getting _____, so I went home. (bad)
 54. Feyisa gets, _____ he looks like his grandfather. (old, much)
 55. My sister's maths home work is getting _____ (difficult)

I. Answer key (42-55).

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| 42. right. | 46. Right. |
| 43. right. | 47. Wrong. (lazier) |
| 44. Wrong. (hotter than) | 48. Right. |
| 45. Wrong. (the more, the more) | |
| II. 49. Elder. | |
| 50. better. | |
| 51. further (note farther) | |
| 52. less, happier | |
| 53. worse and worse | |

54. The older, the more
55. more and more difficult

3.3. Superlative Degree

An **adjective** used to talk about comparing more than two persons or things or their qualities is known as **superlative degree**.

Example

The best, the fattest, the heaviest, the cleverest, the bravest,
the most beautiful, the healthiest, the wealthiest, etc.
He is the bravest of all brothers.
She is the most beautiful of all her sisters.

Points to notice in superlative degree

- ☞ The definite article 'the' is placed in the superlative degree.
- ☞ -est is added to one-syllable (a short) adjective.
- ☞ -iest is added to two-syllable adjectives.
(i.e. adjectives ending with 'y' = 'y' is changed into 'i')
- ☞ Phrases like of all, from the five, in the world/ country,
under the sky, in the school/ class and perfect tenses like
I have ever read/ seen/ known/ heard are always used
with the superlative degree.
- ☞ The irregular adjectives in superlative degree are: best,
worst, most, least, farthest/ furthest, eldest/ oldest, last/
latest, etc. (See the chart back)

3.2.3 Irregular Comparative)

3.3.1. Short and long adjectives

- One-syllable adjectives usually have the **-er, est** ending.

Example

Your laptop is the **smallest** of all (small – smaller – ~~smallest~~)
My father needs the **biggest** computer in his office.
(big – bigger – biggest) This room is the **warmest**.
(warm – warmer – warmest)

- ♦ **Note:** Small, big, warm are short adjectives, so they take 'est'
for their superlative degree.
Amare is the **healthiest** boy in the family.
(healthy – healthier – healthiest)
It is the **prettiest** cloth I have ever bought.

(pretty → prettier → prettiest)
She is the **happiest** girl I have known.
(happy → happier → happiest)

- ♦ **Note:** Adjectives **healthy**, **pretty** and **happy** are two-syllable forms, and they add 'iest' to form their superlative degree.
We use **most/ least** before words ending in **-ed, -ing, -able, -ful** and other adjectives with three-syllable.

Example

This machine is the **most reliable**.
(reliable → more reliable → most reliable)
Everyone was pleased at results, but Dawit is the **most pleased**.
(pleased → more pleased → most pleased)
We did the **most interesting** project.
(interesting → more interesting → most interesting)
Belay is the **least careful** student in his section.
(careful → less careful → least careful)
☞ (See 3.2.15 in comparative)

- ♦ **Note:** More/ less or most/ least + adjective
But best/ worst + noun

Example

Who is the **best** film actor? } with nouns
Monday is the **worst** day for me. }
It was the **most boring** lecture. } with Adjectives
He is the **least competent** mechanic. }

3.3.2. Comparison of Adverbs

Some adverbs have the same form as an adjectives,

Example: early, fast, hard, high, late, long, near.
And they form the comparative and superlative
with **-er, est**.

Example

Andrew works the **hardest**.
Gemechis reacted the **quickest**.
I work **fastest** when I am under pressure.
She tried the **hardest** of all the girls in her class. It
was the **latest** news of this year.

3.3.3. Comparing Quantities

Least and most are the opposite of less and more/ much and used to compare quantities.

Example

The Hotel Sharathon has the most rooms.
She always makes the least mistakes.
I have got the most coffee in this week.
We bought the least butter.

Illustrative Example

56. Of the three girls; Mulunesh, Kasech and Selam, the last is brilliant.

A. the most
B. the more
C. the best
D. much

Explanations

- 'Brilliant' is three-syllable adjective, so the most should be used before it to make its superlative form.

- Physics is the most difficult subject of all.
- Mathematics is the most useful subject of all.

- 'The best' is not followed by adjective, but noun.

(See 3.3.1) Answer: A

57. She is _____ player of us all.

A. the most
B. the best
C. the good
D. the better

Clues: 'best' is the superlative form of 'good'

- we use the to express quality, value.

Answer: B

58. Our school is by far _____ in the region.

A. more successful
B. better successful
C. the most successful
D. less successful

Explanations

- Like the comparative, superlative degree can be modified by words by far, a bit, nearly, etc.

Example: much farthest by far the most

a bit more expensive by far the best

Answer: C

59. Mary is the _____ of the four girls.

A. taller
B. tall
C. more taller
D. tallest

Answer: D

60. Identify the mistake.

A. the best singer
B. my oldest friend
C. Jemberu's most attractive quality.
D. her worse day

Clues: Before a superlative we normally use the or a possessive.

- Note: 'worse' after 'her' should be 'worst'

Answer: D

61. Sara is my eldest sister.

✓ This means:

A. I have more than one sister.
B. I have one sister older than me.
C. Sara is the oldest of all.
D. Confusing.

Compare

Dereje is my elder brother. (comparative)

(= I've one brother (Dereje) older than me)

Dereje is my eldest brother. (superlative)

(= I've more than one brother (without Dereje))

Answer: A

62. Which is correct?

A. It is the longest day of the year.
B. This winter is the coldest in living memory.
C. He is nicest when he has had a few drinks.
D. England is best in spring. E. All are correct.

Clues: We don't use 'the' when we are comparing somebody or something with him/ her/ itself in other situation.

- The weather is usually worst in February.

Answer: E

63. The nicest moment _____ the day

A. of B. in C. under D. with

Clues: After superlative, we use 'of'

- She is the best player of us all.

Answer: A

64. She is the best player _____ the team.

A. of B. in C. among D. all

Clues: But we don't use 'of' with a singular word for a place or group.

Example

She is the happiest women in the world.

The most experienced general in the army.

65. Last night I got the _____ snack attack I ever had. Answer: E
- A. most worst C. worst
- B. more worse D. worse

Explanations

• Best, worst, are irregular adjectives, so 'most' can't be used before it.

We don't say: more better, most best.

more worse, most worst

- I. Add to each sentence the correct form of the word in the margin. (superlative form) Answer: C
66. The _____ job I ever had was baby-sitting for spoiled four-year-old twins. (bad)
67. The _____ day of my life was when my child was born. (wonderful)
68. The _____ chocolate cake I ever ate had bananas in it. (good)
69. Aunt Ababush is the _____ of the three sisters. (young)
70. A rain that freezes is _____ than a snow storm. (bad)
71. That is the _____ home I've ever seen-it's shaped like a teapot. (unusual)
72. Being painfully shy has made her the _____ friendly person I know. (little)

II. 'Of' or 'in' after a superlative below?

73. the shortest day _____ the year.
74. the worst student _____ the class.
75. the best restaurant _____ Addis Ababa.
76. the most interesting _____ all the suggestion.
77. the oldest person _____ my family.

III. Write Sentences with Superlative

78. which/ high mountain/ Africa? _____
79. which/ cheap/ these three jackets/? _____
80. when I was a child I/ tall boy/ my class. _____
81. Taddese and Ashebir/ fast swimmers/ team. _____

82. who/ young/ your three sisters/? _____

IV. Make two sentences for each item

83. a tiger/ large/ a leopard. _____
84. large/ of all the big cats? _____
85. this wine/ expensive/ that one _____
86. expensive/ in the world _____
87. Max's party/ good/ Rob's party _____
88. good/ I've ever been to _____
89. Sara is not _____ she used to be. (UEE 2007)

- A. a good singer as C. as good a singer as
- B. as a good singer D. so good a singer than

Clue: If we put a singular countable noun between an adjective and the second 'as', we use a/ an in front of the noun.

- She was **as patient a teacher as** anyone could have had.
- It is not **as quite a place as** it used to be.

Answer: C

Answer Key (66 - 88)

- | | | | |
|------|--|-----|--------|
| I. | 66. worst | II. | |
| | 67. most wonderful | | 73. of |
| | 68. best | | 74. in |
| | 69. youngest | | 75. in |
| | 70. worse | | 76. of |
| | 71. most unusual | | 77. in |
| | 72. least | | |
| III. | 78. Which is the highest mountain in Africa? | | |
| | 79. Which is the cheapest of these three jackets? | | |
| | 80. When I was a child, I was the tallest boy in my class. | | |
| | 81. They are the fastest swimmers in the team. | | |
| | 82. Who is the youngest of your three sisters? | | |
| IV. | 83. A tiger is larger than a leopard (comparative) | | |
| | 84. Is it the largest of all the big cat? (superlative) | | |
| | 85. This is more expensive than that one (comparative) | | |
| | 86. It is the most expensive in the world (superlative) | | |
| | 87. Max's party was better than Rob's party (comparative) | | |
| | 88. It was the best I've ever been to (superlative) | | |

Review Exercises

1. Musema is _____ Sabit.
A. elder than C. older as
B. older than D. old as
2. There are _____ in our class.
A. less boys than girls C. least boys of the girls
B. fewer boys than girls D. fewest boys than the girls
3. Which one is the _____ building in Addis Ababa?
A. longest C. most highest
B. tallest D. many tallest
4. The animal that rats are _____ afraid of is a cat.
A. best B. least C. most D. highest
5. Of all the mechanics the workshop, Megersa is surely _____.
A. competent C. less competent
B. the least competent D. more competent
6. Today's technology is getting _____.
A. more and more better C. best and best
B. better and better D. good and good
7. A living fly is _____ a dead lion.
A. goodder than C. better than
B. the best than D. more than
8. Lambs are more innocent than _____ animals.
A. many other C. all other
B. any other D. more other
9. Arebu is the _____ teacher I have ever met.
A. most resourceful C. resourceful
B. more resourceful D. best resourceful
10. We need _____ education these days. All
A. far B. farther C. further D. All
11. Take as _____ sugar as possible. It is not good for your health.
A. little B. least C. a few D. much
12. We did _____ project in our school.
A. the more interesting C. more interesting
B. the most interesting D. an interesting

13. My sister is as tall _____ me.
A. than B. more C. as D. like
14. Mosisa is my _____ brother.
A. elder B. older C. older than D. none
15. Some rubber shoes are _____ comfortable than leather shoes.
A. least B. most C. more D. more better
16. Her Mathematics result is getting _____.
A. The more C. The little
B. The better D. The less
17. _____ You read, the un wiser you become.
A. more and more worse C. bad and bad
B. worse and worse D. A and B
18. Muna is _____ her sister.
A. older than C. old
B. elder than D. A and B
19. They have _____ books than I have.
A. less B. lessor C. few D. fewer
20. She got to school _____ than I did.
A. latter B. later C. late D. too late
21. I am two years _____ than you.
A. younger C. young
B. youngest D. so younger
22. We stayed at _____ hotel in the town.
A. cheaper C. the cheapest
B. more cheaper D. cheapest
23. It was a very bad experience.
It was _____ in my life
A. the baddest experience
B. the worst experience
C. more worse experience
D. All are correct
24. The most famous actor _____ them all.
A. in B. by C. among D. of
25. The most frightening _____ the four men.
A. in B. with C. of D. by
26. The Taj Mahal is _____ than the White House.
A. much old C. much older
B. more older D. many older

27. The more he talked, _____ he listened.
 A. the little C. less
 B. the best D. the less
28. I'm pleased to report that inflation has risen _____ last month.
 A. more slowly C. slowest
 B. more slower D. the slowest than last
29. She is not _____ clever _____ her mother.
 A. as as C. so Than
 B. so as D. A and B
30. Addis Ababa is attractive than _____ cities in East Africa.
 A. any other C. more other
 B. many other D. all other
31. Who is _____ film actor in the world?
 A. the best B. better C. the most D. best
32. Of all the planes, a jet can fly _____.
 A. fast B. faster C. more faster D. fastest

Answer Keys

- | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. A | 4. C | 5. B | 6. B | 7. C | 8. C |
| 9. A | 10. C | 11. A | 12. B | 13. C | 14. A | 15. C | 16. B |
| 17. D | 18. A | 19. D | 20. B | 21. A | 22. C | 23. B | 24. D |
| 25. C | 26. C | 27. D | 28. A | 29. D | 30. D | 31. A | 32. D |

4. PHRASAL VERBS AND IDIOMS

4.1. Introduction

Phrasal Verb: is a verb phrase formed from a verb and adverb particle.

- Verbs may be: break, carry, deal, fill, go, get, hold, let, make, put, run, take, wear, etc.
- Adverb particles may be: at, out, off, on, with, away, down, up, over, through, in, after, etc.

Thus, when a verb and a particle joined together, a new phrasal verb is formed.

Look at the combination of the two

break + down = **break down** (stop working)

carry + out = **carry out** (conduct, do)

deal + with = **deal with** (study, discuss)

fall + out = **fall out** (to stop friendship)

fill + in = **fill in** (complete a form)

go + on = **go on** (continue)

get + over = **get over** (recover from illness)

hold + on = **hold on** (wait for telephone)

let + down = **let down** (to disappoint)

make + up = **make up** (invent, do past work)

put + on = **put on** (dress oneself)

run + over = **run over** (knock down with a vehicle)

run + away = **run away** (to escape)

take + off = **take off** (to rise from the ground)
(to remove some clothing)

Work + out = **work out** (to find the answer)

Note: Some phrasal verbs are made of a verb and two particles.

looking + forward + to = look forward to (think a head with pleasure)

get + in + to = get in to (arrive)

put + up + with = put up with (tolerate)

get + out + of = get out of (leave a car)

run + in + to = **run into** (to collide with)

keep + up + with = **keep up with** (go at the same rate)

get + along + with = **get along with** (being friendly)

Note 1: One phrasal verb can at least carry two different meanings.

Take off: to remove cloth.

- As it is too hot, I am **taking off** my jacket.

Take off: leave the ground to start flight.

- The morning plane **takes off** at 12 a.m.

Note 2: A phrasal verb doesn't often have literary meaning which uses only the basic meaning of a word.

take after: "take" means to receive, "after" means later. So according to this definition, **look after** doesn't mean "receive later" which is literal.

Take after, as a phrasal verb, mean **resemble** one of the family members (maybe in color, or physically, etc.) (such meaning is idiomatic meaning)

So, the meaning of phrasal verb is **independent** of the meaning of each of its two or three parts (verbs and particles)

4.2. Basic Rules for using phrasal verbs

4.2.1. Separable phrasal verbs

(phrasal verbs with separate particles)

• Separable two – word verbs

With a separable two-word verb, a noun may come either between the verb and the preposition or after the preposition. (i.e. They can have a noun object before or after the particle. For example, when the object like this coat, the lights, the radio, the television, the shoes, etc.) is a full noun the particle. Small words may come either before or after it.

Example:

The noun object after the particle	The noun object before the particle
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn on all the lights. I handed in my paper. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn all the lights on. I handed my paper in.

• Please take off your shoes	Please take your shoes off .
They are going to put off the meeting. (postpone)	They are going to put the meeting off .
I am going to put on this coat. (dress)	I am going to put this coat on .
He is going to give up his job (leave)	He is going to give his job up .
Please ring up your Mama (make a call, phone)	Please ring your Mama up .
They managed to put out the fire. (extinguish) etc.	They managed to put the fire out .

Important 1: In the examples above, the object used both before and after the particle are **direct objects**. These kinds of phrasal verbs are also called **phrasal verb type I** as they can be split (separable) by their noun objects – go in different places (before or after a particle).

Important 2: When a phrasal verb uses an object pronouns (it/him/her/them/us/you), these pronouns always go between a verb and a particle. (i.e. they can never go at the end (after a particle))

Example

Possible	Impossible
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I turned on the light. I turned it on. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> I <u>turned on</u> it.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Please put down the books. Please put them down. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Please <u>put down</u> them.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> She let down her teacher. She let him down. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> She let down him

So, in the above table, the object is pronoun, it can only go before the particle (off, on, down, etc.) That means it goes between the verb and the particle and only used as indirect object (it, me, them, us, her) in separable phrasal verbs.

4.2.2. Nonseparable phrasal verbs

(Phrasal verbs with inseparable particles)

Nonseparable phrasal verbs can either be one or two word-verbs. (i.e. verb + one/two particles)

**Nonseparable: one -word verb (with one particle)
(verb + adverb particle)**

- go after = pursue
- take after = resemble one's family
- look after = to care for something / somebody

Compare:

He often **looks after** his little brother. ✓

He often **looks** his little brother **after**. ✗

He often **looks after** him. ✓

He often **looks** him **after**. ✗

My elder sister **takes after** Mama. ✓

But my younger sister doesn't **take after** her. ✓

My elder sister **takes** Mama **after**. ✗

But my younger one doesn't **take** her **after**. ✗

**Nonseparable two word verbs (with two particles)
(Verb + two particles)**

- go back on = break promise / words
- go into = examine
- put up with = tolerate
- run into = collide with, meet by chance
- break into - to get inside a building by force
- looking forward to = to be excited and pleased about something
- Keep up with = to go at the same rate

Compare:

Henok doesn't **go back on** his words. ✓

Henok doesn't **go back** his words **on**. ✗

Henok doesn't **go back on** them. ✓

Henok doesn't **go back** them **on**. ✗

We should **go into** the problems deeply. (examine)

I **ran into** my old friend yesterday.

I **ran into** her yesterday. (met by chance)

I saw the lorry **run into** the bus. (collided)

I am really **looking forward to** my vacation.

I have always **looked up to** Megersa for his courage and determination (admire)

The dog **keep up with** The horse. (in the same rate)

I often **put up with** my friend's misbehavior (tolerate)

Note: Nonseparable phrasal verbs are also known as type 3 for they never separate the particle from the stem.

4.2.3. Particles and prepositions

Look at these: She will **look after** the baby.

He will **see to** it. We'll **go into** the questions

We call the words (after, into, to) particles, and not prepositions here because their function with phrasal verbs is very different.

Compare: go into (as to mean 'examine') and (as to mean 'enter')

Let's **go into** the problem deeply. (Phrasal verb)

Let's **go into** the kitchen. (Preposition)

Verb + preposition: non - phrasal

Please **come up** the stairs.

Example

I **go to** the bank on Fridays.

He **walked up** the hill (prep)

You had better not **step on** that Carpet.

She **laughed at** the old lady. (prep)

We spent the afternoon **listening to** records. (Prep)

You can **come out** now (particle).

Please **come down** the stairs. (preposition, come up: particle)

Note: Most verbs (especially verbs of movement) can occur in free association with prepositions and particles, but these combinations are not always phrasal verbs. For example: climb, come, go, walk, etc. will combine freely with down, from, in, up, etc. and has literal sense.

In contrast, the combination of verb + preposition or particle can be described as phrasal verb when the two (or three) parts are in common association (not "free association") and produce a particular meaning which may either be obvious:

Example: I took off my jacket (removed OR idiomatic/non-literal sense)

Example: The plane took off (= rose into the air.)

4.2.4. Transitive phrasal verbs

Some two-word verbs can be used as transitive verbs (transitive phrasal verbs: verbs with object)

Example

I could finish up the work (= complete)

He have given up smoking. (= stopped)

She brings idea up. (= mentions the idea)

The beggar held out his hand. (= put his hand out)

The school will take on two teachers (= employ)

The students carried out a survey (= do)

Note: Transitive phrasal verbs can go both with separable and non-separable pattern.

Compare: He has taken up a new sport (= started)

He has taken a new sport up.

He has taken it up.

They pulled down the old houses. (demolished)

They pulled the old houses down.

They pulled them down

4.2.5. Intransitive phrasal verbs

Verbs those doesn't take any object are called intransitive

(= not transitive): transitive ≠ intransitive (opposite)

take off - start flight

pass away - die (passon)

come about - happen

run out of - complete

break down - stop functioning/cry

set off - begin a journey

come down - reduce in price

Fall out - quarrel

Example

The flight took off at nine o'clock.

His father passed away in car accident.

The accident came out at night.

We are always running out of matches in our house.

They broke down a lot at their friend's funeral.

The car broken down outside the city.

We set off early in the morning.

The price of crops has come down in 15%

Aberas and Tizita fell out because they both like Yonas.

Intransitive
phrasal verbs

Note1: In these examples the particle are not followed by any objects. Intransitive phrasal verbs are always nonseparable. Because, there is not an object that separate the particle from its verb.

Note2: Some phrasal verbs can either be transitive or intransitive (with or without object)

(Intr): take off - leave the ground to start flight (plane)

• Planes take off from the airport (group into the air)

(tran): take off - remove a cloth, shoes, etc.

• Please take off your shoes before you enter mosque.

(Inter): hold out - mention one's position

• The workers held out for better job.

(trans): hold out - put one's hand out

• The beggar held out his hand.

(Intran): break down - to cry, to stop working

• It broke down at my friend's funeral.

• The car broke down outside the town.

(trans): Break down + object - (partition in smaller)

• She broke down the glass.

(Intran): go off/blow up - explode

• A bomb went off/blew up three miles away last week.

(trans): blow up + object - (action by someone)

• The soldier blow up a bomb three miles away.

4.2.6. Multi-meaning phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs can have more than one meaning:

Put out

- Put out your cigarettes. (= extinguish)
- I felt quite put out. (= annoyed)
- We put out a request for volunteers (= issued)
- They're putting the programme out tomorrow. (broadcasting)
- This stuff will put you out in no time. (= make you unconscious)
- Marta has put out her hip again (= dislocated)

turn down

The music is just up. Please turn it down. (make it lower)

She begged to offer him, but he turned down. (refused; declined)

get through

- I won't get through all my homework this evening. (finish)
- I can't get through to the school on the phone (= make contact)
- Do you think you will get through? (= pass)

get round

- How do we get around this problem? (= deal with)
- The news will soon get round. (= be widely communicated)

run into

- I saw the lorry run into the bus. (= to collide with)
- My Mother and my aunt ran into each other in the market. (= to meet)

let down

- We let the bucket down the well in a rope. (= to lower)
- If you don't pass your exam, you will let your parents down (= to disappoint)

break up

- Their marriage broke up after two years (= separate and)
- The police broke up the fight. (= stop an activity)

take down

- The police took down the names of the men in the fight.

(= to record in writing)

- The builders have taken down the old bridge. (= to take to pieces)

pick up

- Pick up that bucket by the handle. (= to lift something)
- He often pick up his friend from school. (= give a ride)

turn off

- Please turn off the lights during the sleep (= stop or switch off a device)
- You'll turn off at the second cross road. (= change direction)

look up to

- We should look up to a person of great status. (= respect/admire)
- Look up the meaning of these words in a dictionary (= find)
- I often look up my friend when I go to Hawasa (= Visit)

look after

- Mamma looks after the new born baby (= take care of)
- My brother looks after my business when I'm out. (to be responsible)

4.2.7. Other phrasal verbs (with their meaning)

Call off: cancel

Catch up with: reach the same position or level.

Cheer up: make someone feel happier

1. break away: leave an organization
2. bring in: introduce a new thing to
3. bring up: rear children; mention/introduce a topic
4. build up: develop a company
5. break out: begin suddenly
6. better off: be in better situation than before
7. carry out: to do/perform something
8. carry on: to keep on doing something (continue)
9. call on: to visit someone; to ask to speak in class
10. call for: to collect/assemble someone
11. clean up: make clean and orderly
12. drop out (of): stop going to school, to a class, to a club, etc.

13. **drop in:** visit without having made arrangements.
14. **do up:** get fastened
15. **find out:** discover information
16. **fall out:** to stop being friendship
17. **fill in:** to complete a form
18. **go up:** increase, turn up
19. **go on:** to continue-carry on
20. **get over:** to recover from illness /feel better of
21. **give up:** to stop doing somethings
22. **get off:** leave an airplane, a bus, a train, a subway, a bicycle
23. **get in:** enter a car, arrive (= get into)
24. **come across:** meet by chance/unexpected visit
25. **get up:** arise from bed, a chair
26. **get along with:** exist satisfactorily
27. **go away:** leave a place or disappear
28. **get down:** to alight from (eg. He got down from /off the bus)
29. **get on:** enter an airplane, a bus, a train, a bicycle, etc.
30. **give on:** open into a place, for a door/window
31. **give off:** emit pollution, expand
32. **go through:** Make practice /study
33. **get on with:** have be friendly with someone
34. **hang up:** conclude a telephone conversation
35. **hold off:** when bad weather doesn't appear
36. **hold up:** delay, stop
37. **leave out:** not include
38. **look for:** to try to find- search for
39. **look out (for):** be careful
40. **move in:** start living in a place
41. **make up:** invent; do past work
42. **mess up:** to do something wrong
43. **hang on:** to wait (hang on a minute!)
44. **name after /for:** give a baby the name of someone else
45. **hand in:** submit an assignment/paper
46. **give away:** entrust your daughter to her husband...

47. **put on:** put clothes on one's body (= wear/dress)
48. **put off:** to delay, to postpone a program, party, meeting
49. **put in:** to submit
50. **keep up with:** stay at the same position or level
51. **keep off:** not talk about
52. **put down:** to write down
53. **pull down:** to demolish
54. **pull out:** to extract (eg. To decay teeth)
55. **payoff:** to pay adept
56. **put away:** remove to a proper place
57. **pass away:** die (pass on)
58. **run out(of):** have none left
59. **ring up:** to make a telephone call for somebody
60. **ring off:** to end a telephone call
61. **stay up:** not go to bed
62. **run over:** to knock down with vehicle
63. **show in:** to let somebody in (enter home, office, etc)
64. **take on:** employ a worker
65. **speak up:** talk more loudly
66. **try on:** to see how well some clothing fits.
67. **Take up:** begin a new activity or topic /practice
68. **Take away:** to subtract or remove
69. **Take over:** to take control of something
70. **Set off:** to begin a journey
71. **Wear out:** to use something until unusable
72. **Wake up:** get up
73. **Work out:** to find the answer
74. **Write in:** to apply for
75. **Take part in:** join in, participate in, involve in
76. **Put up with:** bear with-tolerate
77. **Wear off:** disappear

Note: you may look the examples of these phrasal verbs in a dictionary as well as your textbook (index).

4.3. English Idioms and fixed expressions

Notes: Idioms are fixed expressions with meanings that are usually not clear or obvious. The individual words often given you no help in deciding the meaning.

Example: "to feel under the weather": which means "to feel unwell" is an idiom. The words do not tell us what it means, but the context usually helps you.

A. tips for dealing with idioms

Think of idioms as being just like single words; always record the whole phrase in your notebook, along with information on grammar and collocation.

Example

This tin-opener **has been better days**. [= it's rather old and broken down; usually of things, always perfect tense form is used]

Idioms are usually rather informal and include an element of personal comment on the situation. They are sometimes humorous or ironic. As with any informal commenting single word, be careful how you use them. Never use them just to sound "fluent" or "good at English".

For example, in a formal situation, with a person you don't know, don't say:

"How do you do, Mrs. X. Do **take the weight off your feet**" (= which means "sit down")

Instead say: "Do sit down" or "have a seat".

Idioms can be grouped in a variety of ways. Use whichever way you find most useful to help you remember them. Here are some possible types of grouping:

Grammatical:

- get the wrong end of the stick = misunderstand
- pull a fast one = trick / deceive somebody
- poke your nose in(to) = interfere

Verb + object

- be over the moon = extremely happy / elated
- feel down in the dumps = depressed / low
- be in the red = have a negative bank balance

Verb +
preposition
phrase

By meaning: (e.g. idioms describing people's character/intellect)

- He is as daft as a brush = very stupid or silly
- He takes the biscuit = the worst of all
- You're a pain in the back = a nuisance/difficult person

by verb and other key word: (e.g. idioms with make)

- I don't see why you have to make a meal out of everything (i.e. exaggerate the importance of everything)
- I think we should make a move. It's gone 4 o'clock. (i.e. go/leave)
- Most politicians are on the make. I don't trust any of them. (i.e. wanting money/power for oneself)

B. Grammar of idioms

It is important when using idioms to know how flexible their grammar is; some are more fixed than others.

For example, **barking up the wrong tree** (= be mistaken). This is always used in continuous, not simple form.

Example. I think you're **barking up the wrong tree**.

4.4. Similes: (as....as and like)

A. As..... as

A simile is a comparison of two objects using the words "like or as."

Similes are easy to understand. If you see the phrase "as dead as a doornail", you don't need to know what a **doornail** is, simply that the whole phrase means "totally dead". But, remember, fixed similes are not 'neutral'; they are usually informal/colloquial and often humorous. So, use them with care, and keep them generally as part of your receptive vocabulary.

Note: Creating a picture in your mind can often help you remember the simile.

- as blind as a **bat** (picturize it)

- as thin as a **rake** (picturize it)
 - as strong as an **ox**. (Picturize it)
 - as quiet as a **mouse** (picturize)
- Some can be remembered as pairs of opposites.
- as **heavy** as lead \neq as **light** as a feather
 - as **black** as night \neq as **white** as snow
 - as **drunk** as a lord \neq as **sober** as judge
- Some can be remembered by sound pattern.
- as **brown** as a berry
 - as **good** as gold
 - as **cool** as a cucumber
- Some other useful as as phrases:
- The bed was as hard as iron and I couldn't sleep.
 - I will give this plant some water. The soil is as dry as a bone.
 - He is as mad as a hatter. He crossed the Atlantic in a boat.
 - She told the teacher, as old as brass, that his lesson was boring.
 - You'll have to speak up; he is as deaf as a pot.
 - Don't worry. Using a computer is as easy as falling off a log.
 - She knew the answer as quick as a flash.
 - When I told him, his face went as red as a beetroot.
- Sometimes the second part can change the meaning of the first.
- The princess's skin was as white as snow (= beautifully white)
 - When he saw it, his face went as white as a sheet.
(= pale with fear / horror)
 - The fish was sick and I was as sick as a dog. (= vomiting)
 - She ran off with my money; I felt as sick as a parrot.
(= bad feeling of frustration/disillusionment)
- B. Like
- My plan worked like a dream, and the problem was soon solved
 - Be careful the boss doesn't see you; she has eyes like a hawk.
 - No wonder he's fat. He eats like a horse and drinks like a fish.
 - X: Did you sleep well? Y: Yes, thank you, like a dog.
 - Sorry, I forgot to ring him again. I have got a head like a sieve.

- The boss is like a bear with a sore head today. (= in a very bad temper)
- She goes around like a bull in a China shop.
(= behaving in a very clumsy, insensitive way)
- Criticizing the government in his presence is like a red rag to a bull
(= certain to make him very angry)

4.5. Binomials

Binomials are expressions (often idiomatic) where two words are joined by a conjunction (usually "and"). The order of the words is usually fixed. It's best to use them only in informal situation, with one or two exceptions.

Example

Odd and ends = small, unimportant things

- Let's get the main things packed; we can do the **odds and ends** later.

Give and take = a spirit of compromise.

- Every relationship needs a bit of **give and take** to be successful.

A. You can often tell something is binomial because of the sound pattern

- Tears are **part and parcel** of growing up. (part of or belong to)
- The boss was **ranting and raving** at us. (= shouting or very angry)
- The old cottage has gone to **rack and ruin**. (= ruined or decayed)
- He is so **prim and proper** at work. (= rather formal and fussy)
- The hotel was a bit **rough and ready**. (= poor standard)
- She has to **wine and dine** important clients. (= entertain)

B. Other times, the clue is that the words are near synonyms

- You can **pick and choose**; it is up to you. (= have a wide choice)
- My English is progressing in leaps and bounds. (= big jumps)
- It is nice to have some **peace and quiet**. (= Peace or calm)
- The doctor recommended some **rest and recreation**. (= relaxation)
- First and foremost, you must **work hard**. (= first/most importantly)

C. Many grammar words combine to form binomials

- There are cafes **here and there**. (= scattered round)

- We've had meetings **on and off**. (= occasionally)
- I've been running **back and forth** all day. (= to and fro somewhere)
- **To and fro** can be used just like **back and forth**.
- He's unemployed and **down and out** (= without home or money)
- She's better now, and **out and about** again. (= going out)
- She ran **up and down** the street (= in both directions)

D. Your language probably has many binomials. Make sure those which too similar in English have the same word order as your language. These four are very new trial binomials and can be used in formal or informal situations. Try translating them:

- A **black and white** film, please.
- She ran **back and forth**.
- **Ladies and gentlemen**, your attention, please.
- There was **hot and cold** water in every room.

E. Binomials linked by words other than "and"

- You've got your sweater on **back to front**. (= the wrong way)
- He won't help her; she'll have to **sink or swim** (= survive or fail)
- **Slowly but surely**, I realized the boat was sinking (= gradually)
- **Sooner or later**, you'll learn your lesson. (= sometime/someday)
- She didn't want to be just friends it had to be **all or nothing**.
- Well I'm sorry, that is all I can offer you; **take it or leave it**
- It's about the same distance as from here to Harar, **give or take** a few miles.
(= perhaps a mile or two more, or a mile or two miles)

4.6. Idioms describing people

A. Positive and Negative qualities

Positive quality	Negative quality
She has a heart of gold . [= very kind, generous]	She's as hard as nails . [= no sympathy for others]
He's as good as gold . [= generous, helpful, well-behaved; used generally for children]	He's rather a cold fish . [= distant, unfriendly]

Note also:

- *He's such an awkward customer.* (= difficult person to deal with)
- *She's a pain in the neck. Nobody like her.* (= nuisance, difficult)
- *He gets on everyone's nerves.* [= irritates everybody, annoys]

B. People's 'fast' and 'slow' qualities

Fast	Slow
He's very quick off the marks ; he always gets things before everybody else.	I was a bit slow off the mark ; The job had been filled by the time I got the forms.
You've asked him to marry you! You're a fast worker ! You only met him three weeks ago!	Come on! Hurry up! You're such a slow coach !

C. How people relate to the social norm

- She's a bit of an **odd-ball**; very strange (= peculiar, unusual, strange)
- He's really **over the top**. (= very exaggerated in behavior)
- He's **round the bend**, if you ask me. (= absolutely crazy /mad)
- My politics are very **middle - of - the road**. (= very normal no radical ideas; neither left nor right wing)

D. Who's who in the class? Idioms for 'people in the class room'

Look these:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| ▪ <i>teacher's pet</i> | ▪ <i>a bit of a big-head</i> |
| ▪ <i>Meron is top of the class</i> | ▪ <i>a lazy-bones</i> |
| ▪ <i>a real know-all</i> | |

Note: The last three idioms are used of people outside of the class, too.

4.7. Idioms describing feelings or mood

A. Positive feelings, moods and states

- Bontu is as **happy as the day is long**. (= extremely contented)
- Tschay seems to be on **cloud nine** these days. (= extremely pleased /happy)
- Everyone seemed to be in **high spirits** (= lively, enjoying things)
- She seems to be **keeping her chin up** (= happy despite bad things)

B. Negative feelings, moods and states

- He had a **force as long as a fiddle**. (= looked very depressed or sad)

- She certainly **looked down in the dumps** (= looked depressed)
- He is **in a black mood**. (= a bad mood/temper)
- Abebe was **like bear with a sore head**. (= extremely irritable)

C. Physical feelings and states

- I could **eat a horse!** (= very hungry)
- I'm **feeling all in**. (= exhausted)
- You're looking a bit **under the weather**. (= not very well/ill)
- She looked, and felt, **on top form**. (= in good physical condition)
- I suddenly felt as if my head was **going round**. (= dizzy)
- I was almost **at death's door** last week. (= very sick or ill)
- An old man is as **fit as fiddle**. (= very fit indeed)

D. Fear/fright

- She was **scared stiff**. (= very scared)
- She **frightened the life out of him**. (= frightened him a lot)
- We were all **shaking in our shoes**. (= trembling with fear)
- The poor lad was **scared out of his wits**. (= very scared indeed)
- I **jumped out of my skin** when I heard the bang. (= gave a big jump)

Remember: there is an element of **exaggeration** in these idioms; they make comments on the situation and lighten the tone of what you are saying. So use them only informally.

Look at these	be fooled	Keep a cool head
Phrases of mood	stay calm	things are looking better
	Feel very proud	feel on top of the world
	Very happy indeed	

4.8. Idioms connected with problematic situations

A. Problems and difficulties

Idiom	literal phrase
to be in a fix	= be in difficulty
to be in a tight corner	= be in a situation that's hard to get out of
to be in a muddle	= be confused or mixed up
(these three go together as all having bet in + a)	

Reacting in situations

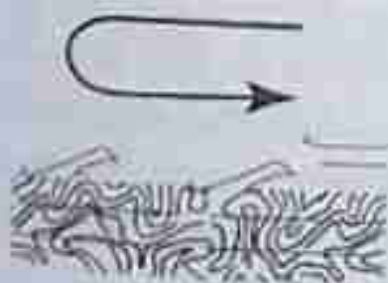
Three pairs of more or less opposite idioms:

- To **take a back seat** [= not do anything; let others act instead] ≠ to **take the bull by the horn** [= act positively to face and attack the problem]
- To **stir things up** [= do/say things that make matters worse] ≠ to **pour oil on troubled waters** [= do/say things that calm the situation down]
- To **keep one's cards close to one's chest** [= hold back information] ≠ to **lay one's cards on the table** [= be very open, state exactly what your position is]

B. Idioms related to situations based on "get"

- This has to be done by next week; we must **get our act together** before it is too late. (= organize ourselves to respond; informal)
- We need a proper investigation to **get to the bottom of things** (= find the true explanation for the state of affairs)
- It's quite difficult to **get people to sit up and take notice** (= make them pay attention)
- I'm trying to **get a grasp of** what is happening; it is not easy. (= find out / understand)

C. Changes and in situations



- The tide has turned for us; better days are ahead



- we can see light at the end of the tunnel at last

- I'm afraid we've just come to a **dead end** with our plans.

- I think I've reached a **turning - point** in my career.

D. Some idioms connected with easing the situation

- The government and the unions have **buried the hatchet** the time being (= made peace/stopped fighting each other)
- All that trouble last year was just **swept under the carpet** the end. (= ignored/deliberately forgotten, without solving it)
- You should say sorry. It would go a long way. (= would help a lot)

4.9. Idioms connected with praise and criticism

A. Idioms connected with praise

Saying people/things are better than the rest

- Girma is **head and shoulders above** the rest of the boys (OR he is **miles better** than the other boys); usually, used of people.
- When it comes to technology, Japan is **streets a head** of most other countries. (can be used of people or things)
- When it comes to exam passes, Rift Valley School usually **knocks spots off** the other school. (used of people or things)
- That meal was just **out of this world**.

(Meaning: outstanding/superb; usually, used of things)

Saying people are good at something

Some expressions with idiomatic compound nouns, noun-phrases or compound objectives.

- She's a **dab-hand** at carpentry, just like her father (usually used for manual skills)
- She's a really **first-rate/top notch** administrator, the very best
- When it comes to grammar, she's **really on the ball**. (= knows a lot)
- Abebaw **has a way with** foreign students. The other teacher envied him. (= good at establishing good relations/motivating them)
- Martha really **has green fingers**; look at those flowers!
(= good at gardening)
- Let him do the talking, he's **got the gift of the gab**. (= good at talking)

B. Idioms connected with criticism

Note: There are far more of these in common use than ones connected with praise! You can group some according form; for example, 'S' idioms include several connected with criticizing people and things

- She thinks she's **the cat's whiskers/the bee's knees**.
(= she thinks that she is wonderful)
- He was dressed up **like a dog's dinner**.
(= over-dressed in a showy way)
- When it comes to time-keeping, he's **the world's worst**.
(= no-one is worse)
- I'm sorry, this essay of yours is **a dog's breakfast**.
(= a mess/ very badly done)

☞ This group could be learned in association with "food" words.

- When it comes to unreliability, he really **takes the biscuit**.
(= is the epitome/most striking example of some negative quality)
- Ayantu wants to **have her cake and eat it**.
(= wants everything without any contribution from her side)
- I think he is just trying to **better me up**.
(= give false praise in order to get something)
- A pay-rise and a company car! You **want jam on it**, you do!
(= have totally unreasonable expectations/demands)

☞ Note these idiomatic synonyms of the verb **to criticize**.

- You shouldn't **run down** your own country when you're abroad.
- Why do you always have to **pick holes** in everything I say?

4.10. Idioms connected with using language

A. Good talk, bad talk

- The boss always **talks down** to us. (= talks as if we were inferior)
- My work-mates are always **talking behind my back**.
(= saying negative things about me when I'm not there)
- It was just **small talk**, nothing more, I promise.
(= purely social talk, nothing serious)
- Let's see somewhere else; they always **talk shop** over lunch, and it bores me rigid. (= talk about work)

- Hey! Your new friend's become a real **talking-point** among the class.
Did you know? (= subject that everyone wants to talk about)
It's gone too far this time. I shall have to give him a **talking-to**.
(= reproach/scold him)

B. Talk in discussions, meeting, etc.


1. Who is going to **start the ball rolling**? (= start the discussion)
2. I want to **speak my mind** today (= say exactly what I think)
3. **To put it in a nutshell**, This is a waste of time. (= say it in few words)
4. He is so **Long-winded**. (= say things in a long, indirect way)
5. I hope we **wrap up** the discussion by 5:30 (= finish the discussion)
6. He always **talks rubbish**. (= say stupid things)
7. I hope they **get to the point** today.
(= come to the important part of the matter)
8. I hope Zeleke speaks; he always **talks sense**.
(= say intelligent, reasonable things)

4.11. Idioms - miscellaneous

A. Idioms connected with paying, buying and selling

- He bought a real **pig in a poke** when he got that car.
[= buy something without examining properly first]
 - We'll probably have to **pay over the odds** for a hotel room during the week of the festival [= pay more than the usual rate]
 - He did \$ 600 worth of damage to the car and his parents had to **foot the bill**. [= pay up, usually a large amount]
 - The restaurant was a **real rip-off**, or That taxi-driver really **ripped us off**. [= made us pay much too much = very informally]
 - If I were you I'd **drive a hard bargain**. She is desperate to buy a flat and wants yours. [= ask a lot and resist lowering the price]
- See also nose on the human body below.

B. Idioms based on names of "the parts of the body"



He's made of quite a bit of **beachwood** with his maths lately.
[= make progress]

We had to pay through the **nose** for those tickets.
[= pay a huge amount]

You have got to **hand it to** her; he's a grate singer.
[= acknowledge/admit]

I've got that song on the **brain**!
[= just can't stop myself singing it]

I hope you didn't mind me telling you. I just had to get it off my **chest**.
[= tell something that's been bothering you a lot]

Oh, he has got a **finger in every pie**.
[= is involved in many different things]

C. Idioms connected with "daily routine"

- Come on! **Rise and Shine!** We've got to leave!
[= a command to someone to get up, often said to someone who does not want to and at a very early hour]
- There's no time for breakfast. We can get a bit to eat on the motor way. [= have a snack or meal]
- I'll drive and you can have a **nap** in the back seat. [= a short sleep]
- When we get there, there will just be time to **freshen up** before the meeting. [= wash and tidy oneself]
- It's going to be a long day; I'll be **ready to crash out** about 2 o'clock, I should think. [= be very tired ready to sleep almost anywhere]
- Still, we can stay home the following evening and **pit our feet up** (= relax), and just **watch the box** (= watch television)

Illustrative Examples

Models and University Entrance Examination

1. Slavery was not **done away with** until last century.
• The meaning of the underlined **phrasal verb** would be:
A. abolished B. traded C. exchanged D. aggravated
Hint: do away with (phrasal verb) is to mean abolish - completely eradicate. /do away with = done away with/

Answer: A

2. I could **do with** – something to eat.

- **do with:**

A. prepare

B. buy

C. need

D. take

Hint: **do with** (phrasal verb) is to mean need or want something to eat.

3. It seems she **turned down** his idea of going out with her. What a shame!

- **Turned down** (phrasal verb) means:

A. hated

B. disclosed

C. rejected

D. postponed

Hint: **turn down** can have different meanings:

- turn down: to make less loud – downward movement.

Example. Please **turn down** your radio, it is too loud. (decrease)

- turn down: to refuse (say no)

Example. She **turned down** their offer of promotion
(= she didn't accept; she refused/rejected it)

4. I don't **get along with** most of my classmates.

- **Get along with:**

A. go

B. meet

C. play

D. agree

Hint: **get along (with)** is to mean exist satisfactorily – in a good agreement with someone.

Answer: D

5. It's getting too late. We should **be off** now.

- **be off:**

A. sleep

B. leave

C. start

D. turn

Hint: Phrasal verbs with the particle **off** (Example. be off, drive off, walk off, run off, take off, set off, see off, etc.) are connected with the idea of **leaving**.

Answer: B

6. Have you visited Bill? She is just _____ an illness.

A. going over

C. getting under

B. getting over

D. getting out of

Clue: Phrasal verb connected with recovering from or feeling better of an illness is **getting over** (= recover from, feel, better)

○ She is **getting over** a bad attack of flu.

Answer: B

7. How do you **put up with** such rudeness?

- **Put up with:**

A. control

B. insult

C. manage

D. tolerate

Clue: **put up with** something or condition means be tolerate with it.

○ I am not prepared to **put up with** these conditions any longer.

○ I find it difficult to **put up with** you.

Answer: D

8. He would never **go back on** his word.

- **Go back on:**

A. speak loudly

C. come on

B. break a promise

D. know many words

Clue: If somebody **goes back on** their word, they don't keep what they've said to do.

Answer: B

9. What did you do about your aching tooth? Did you get it _____

A. pulled up

C. pulled down

B. pulled out

D. pulled round

Clue: **Pull up** = stop moving as a result of traffic, etc. (for car)

Pull out = to extract / decay a tooth

Pull down = to demolish / distract (for house)

Answer: B

10. The heavy rain caused rocks to _____ from the mountain side and to the ground.

A. break away/fall down

C. give away/put down

B. blow away/take down

D. take away/go down

Answer: A

11. Didn't I tell you to _____ up the meaning of this word in the dictionary?

A. see

B. look

C. refer

D. check

Clue: We **look up** the meaning of words in a dictionary, Encyclopedia, etc. [**look up** = find information in a book]

Answer: B

12. We decided to **call on** and see for ourselves what is going on in the company. Reports show that productions are steadily on the decline.

- **Call on:**

A. pay a visit

C. write back

B. Give a call

D. send delegates

Clue: When you **call on** something or someone or a situation, you visit them.

Answer: A

13. I hear they have **fallen out** over who their daughter should marry.

- **fallen out:**

A. quarreled

B. discussed

C. come to terms

D. remained undecided

Clue: If two friends **fall out**, they'll stop being friends.
(= they **quarrel** and their friendship break away)

14. I'm going to **tidy up** this house tomorrow morning.

- tidy up:

A. paint

B. clean

C. renew

D. change

Answer: A

15. She can't **get** her weight **down**. She is still too heavy.

- get down:

A. exercise

B. practice

C. reduce

D. protect

Answer: B

Clue: To **get something down** means to **reduce it**. Example, fever, weight, temperature, etc.

○ The doctor can't **get the fever down**.

○ The engine is too hot. He has to **get the temp down**.

Answer: C

16. I heard Shibiru _____ an elderly gentleman and he is now under the police custody.

A. ran into

C. ran over

B. ran along

D. ran behind

Clue: According to the idea given in the second sentence, Shibiru is under the control of the police because he made something wrong (trouble, or disagreement) with an elderly gentleman. Such thing, in phrasal verb, is **ran into** which mean encounter problem/trouble.

Answer: A

17. You never know when you may **run into** an old friend.

- run into:

A. call on

B. come about

C. fall out

D. come across

Clue: The other meaning of **run into** is 'come across' which means **meet** somebody by chance.

Answer: D

18. Haven't you _____ anything yet? I guess that one is wonderful.

A. picked out

B. picked down

C. Picked in

D. picked up

Clue: When the speaker says "That is wonderful," someone is about to **select** or make choice of something.

- So, to select or choose = **pick out**

○ **Pick out** the shirt you like best.

○ Can you **pick out** the best wrench for this job?

Answer: A

19. We _____ all our complaints to the person in charge, but he doesn't seem to care. We don't understand what good governance means.

A. put out

B. down

C. put up

D. put over

Clue: When we **explain** out problems, complaints to somebody (in charge) we **put over/across**.

Answer: D

Example:

The residents **put over** all details of the problem to the mayor and he promised to seek solutions.

Answer: D

20. The chairperson spoke so fast that I couldn't **get down** a word of what he was saying this afternoon.

- get down:

A. hear

B. recite

C. write

D. absorb

Clue: This phrasal verb can have mult meanings. However, in this questions, it can mean **absorb/understand**

Example

get down = reduce (see Q14)

get down = depress [The weather is really **getting me down**.]

get down = to alight from = **get off** the bus.

get down to = being to give serious attention.

(Example: It's time you **got down** to some work)

get down = take in = absorb = understand

Answer: A

21. I understand it is taking them year to _____ the shock of their son's death. It's really pity to them.

A. get over

B. put over

C. go over

D. get down

(See Q-5) Answer: A

22. I didn't **ring off** until he said he didn't love me. Once I heard that, I forced myself to completely **erase** him **out** of my mind.

- ring off:

A. hang up

B. hold on

C. ring up

D. shut down

Clue: When you **ring off** a telephone call, you'll end the call.

(ring off ≠ ring up)

▪ hang on = **to wait** a telephone call

▪ hang up = **to end** a telephone conversation

▪ ring up = **to make** a telephone call for someone

Answer: D

C. come to terms

D. remained undecided

Clue: If two friends **fall out**, they'll stop being friends.
(= they quarrel and their friendship break away)

14. I'm going to **tidy up** this house tomorrow morning.

- tidy up:

A. paint

B. clean

C. renew

D. change

Answer: A

15. She can't **get** her weight **down**. She is still too heavy.

- get down:

A. exercise

B. practice

C. reduce

D. protect

Answer: B

Clue: To **get** something **down** means to **reduce** it. Example, fever, weight, temperature, etc.

○ The doctor can't **get** the **fever** **down**.

○ The engine is too hot. He has to **get** the temp **down**.

Answer: C

16. I heard Shibiru _____ an elderly gentleman and he is now under the police custody.

A. ran into

C. ran over

B. ran along

D. ran behind

Clue: According to the idea given in the second sentence, Shibiru is under the control of the police because he made something wrong (trouble, or disagreement) with an elderly gentleman. Such thing, in phrasal verb, is **ran into** which mean encounter problem/trouble.

Answer: A

17. You never know when you may **run into** an old friend.

- run into:

A. call on

B. come about

C. fall out

D. come across

Clue: The other meaning of **run into** is 'come across' which means meet somebody by chance.

Answer: D

18. Haven't you _____ anything yet? I guess that one is wonderful.

A. picked out

B. picked down

C. Picked in

D. picked up

Clue: When the speaker says "That is wonderful," someone is about to **select** or make choice of something.

- So, to select or choose = **pick out**

○ **Pick out** the shirt you like best.

○ Can you **pick out** the best wrench for this job?

Answer: A

19. We _____ all our complaints to the person in charge, but he doesn't seem to care. We don't understand what good governance means.

A. put out

B. down

C. put up

D. put over

Clue: When we **explain** out problems, complaints to somebody (in charge) we **put over/across**.

Answer: D

Example:

The residents **put over** all details of the problem to the mayor and he promised to seek solutions.

Answer: D

20. The chairperson spoke so fast that I couldn't **get down** a word of what he was saying this afternoon.

- get down:

A. hear

B. recite

C. write

D. absorb

Clue: This phrasal verb can have mult meanings. However, in this questions, it can mean **absorb/understand**.

Example

get down = reduce (see Q14)

get down = depress [The weather is really **getting** me down.]

get down = to alight from = **get off** the bus.

get down to = being to give serious attention.

(Example: It's time you **got down** to some work)

get down = take in = absorb = understand

Answer: A

21. I understand it is taking them year to _____ the shock of their son's death. It's really pity to them.

A. get over

B. put over

C. go over

D. get down

(See Q-5) Answer: A

22. I didn't **ring off** until he said he didn't love me. Once I heard that, I forced myself to completely **erase** him **out** of my mind.

- ring off:

A. hang up

B. hold on

C. ring up

D. shut down

Clue: When you **ring off** a telephone call, you'll end the call.

(ring off ≠ ring up)

• hang on = to wait a telephone call

• hang up = to end a telephone conversation

• ring up = to make a telephone call for someone

Answer: D

23. Old shanty parts of Addis Ababa are **pulled down** and new modern high rising buildings are erected.

- **Pulled down:**

- A. repaired
B. demolished
C. replaced
D. extracted

to **pull down** = to demolish (for house)

to **pull out** = to extract (for tooth)

(See Q -8)

24. The teacher asked us to **hand in** the homework this Friday.

- **Hand in:**

- A. transmit
B. transfer
C. admit
D. submit

Clue: to **hand in** homework, assignment, term paper, etc. means to submit it to whom it concerns.

○ **Hand in** your papers at the end of the exam.

25. We are going to **put off** our vacation until next year.

- **Put off:**

- A. cancel
B. enjoy
C. extend
D. delay

Clue: If you **put off** program, meeting, party or any appointment, you will **extend** or **postpone** in to another time.

I **put off** the appointment.

26. Her sniffing really **puts** me **off** my dinner.

- **Puts off:**

- A. discourage
B. leave
C. eat
D. delay

○ **Puts off**, contextually, means **discourage**.

27. Please _____, we can't hear what you're saying.

- A. speak down
B. speak out
C. speak up
D. speak away

Clue: Please **talk more loudly**, we can't hear your words.

[**talk more loudly** = **speak up**]

28. They two loving sisters. Nobody could tell why they fell _____

- **Fell + ?**

- A. through
B. a part
C. in
D. out

* **Fall out** = quarrel

29. Adamu was given enough time to do his assignment; however, as usual, he **came** _____ several excuses for failing to do his work.

- **Come + ?**

- A. up with
B. across to
C. through
D. in

Answer: A

30. We were not happy with the hotel room we stayed in, contrary to their advertisement, it was noisy and the views were not. We have to _____ a claim to be at least partially refunded.

- A. Put out
B. put through
C. put up
D. put in

Clue: **Put out** = extinguish a cigarette (or fire)

Put out = being in inconvenience

Example

Please don't let me **put you out**. (= inconvenience)

Put through = connect with (in a telephone talk)

Example

Shall I **put you through** her, she is beside me?

(**put through** = join her, contact her)

Put up = fix.

Example.

You are not allowed to **put up** posters here. (= fix)

put up = give accommodation to

Example

I can **put you up** for the weekend. (= give you accommodation)

- **Put in:** submit a request give a comment, a remark

Example

I'm going to **put in** an application for that job (= submit every now and then she would **put in** a remark (= interject)

Answer: D

31. Burglars **forcibly entered** our house while we were on holiday.

- **forcibly entered:**

- A. broke into
B. broke away
C. broke out
D. broke down

Clue: entering a house by using force is to **break into**.

- Burglars **broke in (to)** during the night and took the TV. (entered)

32. These shoes has become unusable. I need a new pair.
 - unusable:
 A. wear out B. wear away C. wear on D. wear out

Clue: wear out: to use something until unusable or out of use (unusable)
 - If you always keep those shoes on, you'll soon wear them out.

33. I find it very hard to understand in his lecture.
 - Understand:

A. take in B. get down C. take on D. take in
 Clue: to understand or absorb something (example, lectures, words, idea) of someone is to take in /get down it.
 (see Q-19)

34. The strike caused to happen a change of government.
 - Caused to happen:

A. brought down B. brought about C. brought on D. brought off

35. I am expecting with pleasure to start work.
 - Expecting with pleasure:

A. looking into B. looking on to C. looking forward to D. looking up to

Clues: I am looking forward to starting work means I 'am expecting it with pleasure.

36. While visiting the museum I met an old friend
 - met:

A. came across B. ran into C. came away D. A and B

Clue: to come across/run into somebody means to meet them by chance.

37. Every time cigarettes go up in price, many people try to stop smoking
 A. give up B. set out C. take off D. give out

Clue: To stop doing something (example habits, work, etc) to give them up.

38. The whole truth became known at the trial.
 - Became known:

A. came across B. came out C. came up D. come in

39. We had made a mistake in our calculations and our fuel was finished before we reached the frontier.
 - Was finished:

A. ran out B. ran over C. ran into D. run off
 - If something becomes to end, we say it runs out.

Example

My patience has run out. (= come to an end)

40. We never knew how the accident happened.
 - happened:

A. came across B. came up C. came out D. came about
 Answer: D

41. He resigned from his job when they refused to promote him.
 - resigned:

A. give out B. gave away C. gave up D. gave off
 - resigned something (work) means stopped it = gave it up
 Answer: C

42. When did you start swimming?
 A. take in B. take up C. take off D. take off

Clue: Start something (example, hobby) is to take it up.
 Answer: B

IDIOMS QUESTIONS

43. That is enough. Let's call it a day.
 - Call it a day:

A. stop B. leave C. delay D. promote
 Answer: A

44. I'm not sure but I can take a shot in the dark.
 - a shot in the dark:

A. a gun B. opinion C. a guess D. a bullet

Clue: Your shot in the dark is your guess/estimation of something, but it is not certain.
 Answer: C

45. His words took my breath away.
 - took my breath away:

A. surprised B. disappointed C. upset D. far away

Clue: If something take you breath away, you are surprised or impressed

with it.

46. He did me a good turn. I've to thank him.

- a good turn:

- A. a mark B. a makeup C. a loan

Clue: doing someone 'a good turn' means do them a favor.

47. If you are not careful you will mess up the work.
mess up:

- A. do it wrongly C. do it properly
B. finish it too late D. end it up early

Clue: mess up, in this sentence is, to do something wrong or make a mess of something.

48. The gunner hit the target right on the nose.

- on the nose:

- A. closely B. nearly C. exactly D. point to nose

Clue: If something is done on the nose; it has been done squarely, exactly; correctly.

49. Do you know to get your hands on any more books like these?

- get your hands on:

- A. to catch B. to obtain C. to read D. to buy

50. Mary and her sister have been at odds with each other for five years. I feel it is time you intervened.

- at odds:

- A. in confusion C. in contrast
B. in unclear terms D. in disagreement

Clue: Be at odds with someone means to disagree with someone about something.

51. Poverty and crime go hand-in-hand in this country.

- go hand-in-hand:

- A. are found together C. one is remedy for another
B. shake hands together D. one safe another

Clue: If two things go hand in hand, they are found together and in the same place and connected to one another.

52. She waited on tables to earn money while she was in college.

- waited one table:

- A. served meals C. painted tables
B. cleaned tables D. sold tables

Clue: "wait on tables" means serve meals to get tables as part time job.
Answer: A

53. He turned an excellent essay in one American Civil War.

- A. Submitted B. narrated C. read D. edited

Answer: A

54. It looks as if the whole building could come tumbling down at any movement.

- Tumbling down:

- A. crack B. demolish C. fall D. move

Answer: B

55. I don't know how we are going to cope with.

- cope with

- A. explain B. win C. manage D. expect

Clue: cope with = to overcome any difficulties presented by.

The government should implement this policy to cope with this serious problem.

Answer: C

Cope with = contend with, deal with, get by with, make do with, make out with, manage with

56. I often can't stand people who always complain. They get on my nerve.

- get on my nerve:

- A. mock me C. award me
B. irritate me D. shout at me

Clue: to get on someone's nerves means to annoy or irritate someone. (The phone used to get on my nerves; it replied 'busy-busy')

Answer: B

57. Stop shouting! I am trying to get grasp of what is happening.

- A. observe B. absorb C. report D. understand

Answer: A

58. When the thief saw the police officers, his face went as white as a sheet.

- A. terrified B. excited C. motivated D. annoyed

Clue: We use /say "as white as a sheet or a ghost" to say very pale and frightened /terrified.

- There was another trucked river who pulled in front of me, who it affected badly. She was as white as a sheet. (very pale or frightened)

Answer: A

59. I couldn't still make up my mind about what to study at university.

- make up:

- A. tolerate B. encourage C. help D. decide

60. Please, bear with me until I finish this. It's very urgent.
- **Bear with:**

- A. tolerate B. encourage C. help D. advise

61. He is leaving. I think he has a bigger fish to fry.
- **a bigger fish to fry:**

- A. something bigger to eat
B. additional cooking to do
C. some more money to collect
D. something more important to do

Clue: a big fish = an important or powerful thing/person (= a big fish to fry = important job to do)

62. Her uncle kicked the bucket without writing a will.
- **kicked the bucket:**

- A. fetched water C. passed away
B. played football D. broke down bucket

Clue: to kick the bucket = die (pass away/on)

63. I was so hungry after a workout, I could eat a horse.

- **eat a horse:**

- A. be very hungry C. be very annoyed
B. be very sad D. be very happy

Clue: eat a horse = be very hungry to be able to eat anything, even a horse

64. During holidays, my daughter becomes a couch potato, watching television the whole day.

- **a couch potato:**

- A. a lazy person C. sell potato
B. like potato D. peel potato

Clue: If someone becomes an idle or spends time unwisely, they are said to be a couch potato (a lazy person)

65. When the two lovers first stayed out for a night, they were over the moon.

- **over the moon:**

- A. spent too much time C. extremely happy
B. invited each other D. landed the moon

Clue: This idiom is purposely used to express extreme pleasure/happiness.

66. His uncle was very famous in those days, but because he was the black sheep of the family, he was never encouraged to talk about him.

- **the black sheep:**

- A. a black person D. a disliked person
B. a person liking ship D. an ugly person

Clue: black sheep: an undesirable member of a group, a disliked person, somebody who causes shame or embarrassment due to deviation.

67. Zehun is the top dog at English in our class.

- **top dog:**

- A. has dominant position C. the tallest of all
B. speak English fluently D. talk about his dog

Clue: When we describe somebody as "the top dog", he/she is the most important person in a group, somebody with the dominant position or highest authority.

- I don't want to be the top dog at our company, I just do my job as well as I can.

68. Surafel: Do you want to go for lunch somewhere nice?

Kedija: No thanks, I'm going to hit the books. I have an exam coming up soon.

- **Hit the books:**

- A. sell the books C. read the books
B. collect the book D. study very hard

Clue: "to hit the books" means to study very hard.

o I hit the books as soon as I knew the date of the exam.

69. I'm not getting enough sleep these days. It's crunch time at work.

- **Crunch time:**

- A. wasted time C. too much time
B. important and wanted time D. picnic time

Clue: crunch time is the period of time just before a project has to be completed and everyone has to work hard

70. She always gets really good marks, I bet it's because she's teacher's pet.

- **Teacher's pet:**

- A. A teacher's favorite student
B. A teacher's relative
C. a teacher's neighbor
D. a teacher's sister

71. I cannot understand why she did that, it really doesn't add up.
A. Isn't mathematics
B. Doesn't calculate
C. doesn't make sense
D. makes the wrong addition

72. All the students got high marks in the test but Tschay stood out.
A. got the most marks of all
B. got a lot of marks
C. got higher marks than someone
D. got very good marks

73. I just want to stay at home and watch television and take it easy.
A. eat
B. relax
C. play
D. sleep

74. Am I allowed to sit in here?
A. Should I
B. must I
C. may I
D. will I

Clue: Am I allowed to do something means I do it or am I permitted to do?

75. We're fed up with the bad weather.
A. Very tired of
B. full of
C. interested in
D. unhappy with

76. Don't worry about fraol, he is a tough cookie.
A. likes cookie
B. fat person
C. eats cookie
D. strong person

77. She was smart enough to marry a fat cat.
A. a foreigner
B. strong person
C. a wealthy person
D. a handsome person

78. I didn't know how to react when he proposed to me out of the blue.
A. show me a blue color
B. unexpected thing
C. an important thing
D. told me a shocking news

Answer: B

79. You should use your head when driving in heavy traffic.
A. nod your head
B. think intelligently
C. drive slowly
D. wear helmet

80. If you want to maintain peace, you must always keep an eye on enemy activity.
A. to watch closely
B. to watch seriously
C. to watch badly
D. to make conflict with

81. He's unemployed and down and out.
A. wanders here and there
B. without a home and money
C. go down and up strains
D. having not wealth.

82. Sooner or Later, you'll learn your lesson.
A. gradually
B. next time soon
C. sometime/day
D. today evening

83. I had never set foot in Agaro before.
A. been to
B. lived
C. known
D. crossed

84. It's not exactly a stressful job. Is it? If it's quiet, it's a piece of cake.
A. sweet cake to eat
B. expensive cake
C. very difficult to do
D. very easy to do

85. He soon caught the theatre bug, and became a jack-of-all-trades.
A. had many different skills
B. was a trade man
C. controlled business
D. had a theatre company

Clue: Someone who has several different skills is said to be a jack-of-all-trades.
A. Someone who can do a lot of different things but who is not very good at doing any of them.

86. I'm sorry, this essay of yours is a dog's breakfast.

- a dog's breakfast:
A. un neatly written
B. submitted too late
C. very badly done
D. composed of few words (a mass):
Answer: b
87. I hope we will wrap up the discussion by 6 o'clock.
- wrap up:
A. start B. finish C. analyse D. report
Answer: B
88. She was almost at death's door last week.
- At death's door:
A. at funeral B. at patient's home C. very weak D. very sick/ill
Answer: D

Exercise 1

Choose the Correct answer

1. The book took off as soon it appeared.
- took off:
A. became successful B. torn out C. gathered quickly D. reached their lowest level
2. Meseret got _____ her illness.
A. On B. out of C. over D. off
3. She has got more work than she can _____ with.
A. put up B. out of C. over D. off
4. She turned off all the lights which had been left on.
- turned off:
A. put off B. took off C. switched off D. be off
5. We have to turn our essays in by Friday.
- turn in:
A. Finish B. write C. submit D. request
6. We took part in a demonstration last Saturday.
- took part in:
A. participated B. involved in C. discussed on D. A and B
7. The story take place in the nearest town.
- take place:
A. happens B. occurs C. receives D. A and B
8. He is always so rude, I wouldn't put up with it if I were you.
- put up with:
A. tolerate B. bear with C. live with D. A and B

9. Let's run over the plans again.
- run over:
A. review B. set out C. discuss on D. prepare
10. I don't want to break up, I really like you.
- Break up:
A. be unhappy B. end relationship C. work with you D. make upset
11. I don't know the meaning of these words. Let me a dictionary.
A. look up them B. look into them C. look them up D. look them out
12. look out! The train is ahead. Look out!
A. take care of you B. watch it carefully C. get on the train D. miss not the train
13. Fanos and Fraol made up after their fight.
- Made up:
A. sent their way B. love each other C. did their home work D. restarted love
14. I can't go out now. I've to _____ my little sister.
A. look out B. look into C. look after D. look up
15. I'll get in touch with you as soon as I'm free, Ok?
- get in touch:
A. telephone you B. go with C. make contact with D. invite you
16. The problem of finance is always raised on such occasions.
- raised:
A. came across B. came up C. came about D. came in
17. He returned the money to the man who had lost it.
- returned:
A. gave out B. gave away C. gave up D. gave back
18. I'd like to telephone call my friend tonight.
- telephone:
A. hang up B. ring up C. hold on D. ring off
19. Did you complete the form?
- complete:
A. fill over B. fill on C. fill in D. fill out
20. They want to extend the appointment to next week.
- extend:
A. put off B. put on C. put away D. put up

21. You should **stop** smoking soon.
- **stop:**
A. give off B. give up C. give out D. give away
22. I **meet** my old friend at the post office yesterday.
- **meet:**
A. came across B. ran into C. came upon D. A and B
23. Language school students should always **keep in mind** their final objective and mission.
- **keep in mind:**
A. think of B. decide C. remember D. plan to
24. The student passed his exam by the **skin of his teeth**.
- **skin of his teeth:**
A. in a sad manner B. by a small margin C. successfully D. in great achievement
25. I didn't **have the heart** to tell him the bad news.
- **Have the heart:**
A. have the courage B. have a good mind C. have low heart beat D. have speaking skill
26. My mother **gave away** old clothes to a large family who live near us.
A. gave up B. gave away C. gave out D. to buy me clothes
27. My family is coming to the airport to **see me off**.
- **see me off:**
A. to say good bye B. to invite C. to give me money D. to buy me clothes
28. Which of your parents do you **take after**?
- **Take After:**
A. like B. resemble C. take care D. help
29. Are you **looking forward to** the holidays?
A. feel happy B. going to C. celebrate D. think about
30. They **ran through** the poem.
- **Ran through:**
A. wrote B. revised C. practiced D. read
31. Why do you always like to **pick holes** in all that I say?
- **Pick holes:**
A. restate B. criticize C. dislike D. repeat
32. Have the election results **come through** yet?
- **Come through:**

33. This word is completely new for me. I would like to write it ____.
A. off B. down C. up D. in
34. Don't let anybody ____! I'll be back soon.
A. in B. on C. up D. down
35. They carried ____ an interesting experiment.
A. off B. in C. on D. out
36. I ran ____ her in a bookshop. (= met accidentally)
A. into B. out of C. upon D. down to
37. Which is correct?
A. Let's put off it B. Let's put it off C. Let's off it put
38. A. I'll call back you.
B. I'll call you back.
C. I'll back you call.
39. A. turn it off.
B. turn off it.
C. off it turn.
40. A. she gave up it.
B. she it gave up.
C. she gave it up
41. A. I can't figure it out.
B. I can't figure out it.
C. I can't it figure out.
42. A. I'd like to try on it.
B. I'd like to try it on.
C. I'd like to it try on
43. A. She'll never let you down.
B. She'll never let down you.
C. She'll never you let down.
44. She always **looks down on** anyone who is poor.
- **Looks down on**
A. consider as below standard B. visits them every month C. help as well as she can D. go with them
45. We asked the owner to **postpone** the meeting until next week.
- **Postpone:**
A. Put off B. take off C. put on D. take on
46. I **stopped** with the cross word in the end. It was too difficult.
- **stopped**
A. gave out B. gave in C. gave up D. gave away
47. This is very bad. I've **quarreled** with my teacher in the classroom.
A. caught up B. called of C. come across D. fallen out
48. I **don't like** coffee; I prefer tea.
- **I don't like:**
A. I don't look after B. I don't care for C. I don't take care D. fallen out
49. I will **visit** you after work and see if you need any help.
- **visit:**

- A. come on
B. come down
C. come up
D. come across
50. It is not easy to become friends with Selam; she tends to be keep everyone at arm's length.
- **Keep at arm's length:**
A. Want not to be too friendly with
B. Like someone to be friend of theirs
C. Encourage someone to be friend with others
D. Be cooperative with others
51. The prime Minister says that the country needs a breath of fresh air.
- **A breath of fresh air:**
A. clean oxygen
B. life free from disease
C. needs no polluted air
D. a change that feels good
52. These glasses cost me an arm and a leg.
A. much energy
B. a lot of money
C. wide place
D. a lot of time
53. He danced with death when he tried to negotiate a deal with that dangerous criminal.
- **danced with death:**
A. confess any sins to God
B. action involves a lot of risks
C. feel sick which may take to death
D. something causes disease.
54. Look at that painting. It's really a feast for the eyes.
A. visually pleasing sight
B. visually affecting sight
C. visually bad for sight
D. visually unattracting sight
55. She felt blue after her divorce.
- **felt blue:**
A. got married B. passed away C. went abroad D. felt sad

Answer keys

- | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A | 20. A | 39. A |
| 2. C | 21. B | 40. C |
| 3. B | 22. D | 41. A |
| 4. C | 23. C | 42. B |
| 5. C | 24. B | 43. A |
| 6. D | 25. A | 44. A |
| 7. D | 26. C | 45. A |
| 8. D | 27. A | 46. C |
| 9. A | 28. B | 47. D |
| 10. B | 29. A | 48. B |
| 11. C | 30. C | 49. C |
| 12. A | 31. B | 50. A |
| 13. B | 32. B | 51. D |
| 14. C | 33. B | 52. B |
| 15. D | 34. A | 53. B |
| 16. B | 35. D | 54. A |
| 17. D | 36. A | 55. D |
| 18. B | 37. B | |
| 19. C | 38. B | |

5. DISCOURSE MARKERS

Discourse markers are words and expressions which show the relationship between different parts of discourses or texts to present a logical arrangement of ideas.

For example, discourse markers include: **Although**, **whereas**, **on the other hand**, **so as to**, **therefore**, **because**, **otherwise**, **in addition to**, **as well as**, **for instance**, **due to**, **firstly**, **of course**, **with regard to**, **by the way**, **I mean**, **anyhow**, **anyway**, **well**, etc.

5.1 Markers of Clause of Contrast

In contrast clause, the two sentences are in the opposite ideas/thoughts.

Adverbial clauses of contrast are statements of contrasting ideas and are also called **concession clauses**.

They are introduced by the following **conjunctions**:

<i>although</i>	<i>but</i>	<i>whereas</i>
<i>even though</i>	<i>however (no matter how)</i>	<i>while</i>
<i>though</i>	<i>nevertheless</i>	<i>yet</i>
<i>despite</i>	<i>nonetheless</i>	<i>In the contrary</i>
<i>in spite of</i>	<i>even so</i>	
<i>(preposition)</i>	<i>even if</i>	

♦ Pattern 1:

<i>through</i>	+ Clause (sub + verb)
<i>although</i>	
<i>eventhough</i>	

- Although, though and even though are to mean the same.
- Even though is probably more usual than though and although in speech. Though is less formal than although and even though.
- They can come first or in the middle of a clause followed by a clause they introduce.

Example

Although/ Though/ Even though/ he had no qualifications, he got the job.

He got the job **although/ even though** he had no qualifications.

Although/ Even though/ Though you are rich, you can't do everything.

- ♦ Note: In spoken English we often use **though** at the end of a sentence, but not **although** and **even though**.

Example

I ate most dairy products. I'm not keen on Yoghurt, **though**.

(NOT: although/ even though)

- ♦ Note: The clause after **although/ even though/ though** should agree with the second clause (contrast)

Compare

Although we went for picnic, it was raining. (wrong)

Although it was raining, we went for picnic. (right)

(= It was raining, but we went for picnic)

- ♦ Note: We don't use another contrast expression with **although/ even though/ though**.

Don't say: **Although** it's raining, yet he will go.

Say: **Although** it's raining, he will go.

- ♦ **Although/though/ even though** are never followed by a noun/pronoun/gerund.

- ♦ Pattern 2:

<i>despite</i>	} + noun phrase / gerund phrase
<i>in spite of</i>	

- in spite of = **preposition phrase**
- despite = **preposition**
- They also link/ relate two opposing or contrasting statements.
- They are to mean the same.
- 'Despite' is without the preposition 'of' (despite of = wrong)
- 'In spite of' is often three words (= in + spite + of)
- Both are used with noun or gerund phrase, not with clause like although/ even though

Example

He is a rich man. He is not generous.

♦ In spite of being rich, he is not generous.

Despite being rich, he is not generous.

Or

He is not generous in spite of/ despite being rich.

Don't say: In spite being rich, he isn't generous.

Despite of being rich, he isn't generous.

Don't say: In spite of he is rich, he is not generous.

Despite he is rich, he is not generous.

♦ Because the pattern after in spite of is clause.

♦ Note: We can use although/ though/ even though with a similar meaning to in spite of/ despite.

Example

The food is excellent. Nobody will ever buy it.

In spite of its excellence, nobody will ever buy the food.

Although the food is excellent, nobody will never buy it.

Despite having few books, the library is a quiet place to study.

Even though it has few books, the library is a quiet place to study.

⇒ (Although + clause and despite + phrase)

♦ Note: After in spite of or despite we use a noun, a pronoun, or -ing.

In spite of the traffic, we arrived on time.

⇒ the traffic = noun phrase

Despite being tired, I couldn't sleep.

⇒ being tired = gerund phrase

In spite of having much money, we haven't bought a car yet.

⇒ having much money = gerund phrase

Despite his laziness, he got the job.

⇒ his laziness = pronoun

In spite of what I said yesterday, I still love you.

⇒ what I said yesterday = pronoun phrase

♦ Bullet point: In spite of is the opposite of because of.

♦ Pattern 3:

<u>despite</u>
<u>in spite of</u>

 + the fact that

Compare

We went out in spite of the rain (despite the rain)

We didn't go out because of the rain.

We went out although it was raining.

We didn't go out because it was raining.

• This structure has similar form to although/ even though.
i.e. We use a clause after despite/ in spite of the fact that.

Example

Despite/ in spite of the fact that some parts of the country receive a lot of rain, other parts receive very little.

Or

Although/ Even though some parts of the country receive a lot of rain, other parts receive very little.

Despite/ In spite of the fact that she fell midway through the race, she won.

Or

Although/ Though she fell midway through the race, she won.

Illustrative Examples

1. _____ we paid the money on time, they didn't let us go.

A. But

C. Even so

B. Although

D. Even then

Clues: The above are two contrast clauses in parallel subordinate clause, and the contrast connection are marked by the subordinate clause connectors like although/ even though/ though in the same way.

Answer: B

2. The concert had to be cancelled _____ the fact that the star guest was ill.

A. in spite of

B. due to

C. so

D. therefore

Clues: This question is also about the statements contrasting each other. We often use the phrase 'the fact that' after prepositions despite and in spite of.

(read the notes)

Answer: A

• Note: Although/ though/ even though always introduces subordinate clause.

3. We went out _____.

A. in spite of the rain

B. although it was raining

C. despite the fact that it was raining

D. All are correct.

Clues: Unlike although groups, in spite of and despite are followed by phrase (noun, pronoun and gerund)

Answer: D

Don't say: Although/ Even though the fact that.

4. _____, I could see that Almaz was crying.

- A. However hard she tried to cry
- B. Although she tried to hide her face
- C. Besides her attempts to hide her face
- D. Because she tried to hide her face

Clues: The second clause is **main-clause** and it should make **contrast** with the first (subordinate) clause using **although/ even though + clause.**

Answer: B

♦ **Note:** Choice (A) could have been the answer if corrected as:
However hard she tried to hide her face

5. _____ she started the exam late, she finished before the other students.

- A. However
- B. In spite of
- C. Nevertheless
- D. Although

Answer: D

6. Although she was ill, she went on working.

This is the same as:

- A. In spite of her illness, she went on working.
- B. She went on working **despite** her illness.
- C. Because she was ill, she went on working.
- D. A and B.

Clues: in spite of and despite are to mean the same followed by phrase. (See the notes)

Answer: D

7. _____ of his bad English, he got the job.

- A. Despite
- B. In spite
- C. Although
- D. A & B

Clues: Despite is not followed by of (despite of = wrong) (in spite of = right)

• Although/ though/ even though + of = wrong

Answer: B

8. _____ She had a bad cold, Emebet played well in the netball match.

- A. Despite the fact that
- B. In spite of the fact that
- C. Although
- D. All

☞ (read the notes)

Answer: D

9. Which is wrong?

- A. Despite he feels unwell, Dawit wants to fly.
- B. In spite of bad weather, the flight was safe.
- C. I can enjoy a holiday in Arabia although I can't speak Arabic.
- D. I'll help him even if he hates me.

Clues: Despite + clause = wrong expression

Answer: A

10. I like music, I also enjoy peace and quiet.

- A. Consequently
- B. However
- C. Because
- D. Although

Answer: D

11. Weather or not she answer the phone, I should call her now.

☞ **This is the same as:**

- A. Even if she doesn't answer, I should call her now.
- B. Because she doesn't answer, I don't call her.
- C. Even though she doesn't answer, I should call her.
- D. All are correct.

Clues: Weather or not = even if.

In the question above the speaker doesn't know (is not sure) weather she answers or not, but he has decided to call her (it doesn't matter if she doesn't answer)

Answer: A

I. Put in although, in spite of/ despite (the fact that) even if

- 12. I intend to go for a walk this morning _____ it is raining.
- 13. She wasn't wearing _____ the cold.
- 14. He didn't get the job _____ having all the necessary qualifications.
- 15. _____ it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.
- 16. _____ he beg you, don't let your son go to cinema in the night.

II. Join the sentences with the connectors/ markers in the brackets.

- 17. She was successful. She felt dissatisfied. (Although)
- 18. She had a bad cough. She was able to sing in the choir. (Despite)
- 19. The shirt is still dirty. I've washed it twice. (in spite of the fact that)
- 20. I don't like dancing. I should go to the concert. (Even if)

Answer: I

12. although
 13. Despite/ in spite of
 14. despite/ in spite of
- II. 17. Although she was successful, she felt dissatisfied.
 18. Despite having a bad cough, she was able to sing in the choir.
 19. The shirt still dirty despite the fact that I've washed it twice.
 20. Even if I don't like dancing, I should go to the concert tonight.

♦ Pattern 4:

but	nevertheless
however	none the less
even so	in spite of this
	despite this

All the above are ways of saying 'but' (are but - contrast)

Examples

He is a nice man. However, he can never solve any problem. Or
 He is a nice man. Even so, he can never solve any problem. Or
 He is a nice man. In spite of this, he can never solve any problem. Or

He is a nice person, but he can never solve any problem.

Politicians have promised to improve road safety.

However, little has been achieved so far.

Politicians have promised to improve road safety.

Despite this, little has been achieved so far.

• Extreme points about "however"

• However can be used as:

- a co-ordinating conjunction or connective when it means 'but' or 'nevertheless'
 - I want you to finish the job; however, you can take as long as you like. (however = but)
 - Kasahun has worked well this year; however, he'll have to make an even greater effort. (however = nevertheless)

Points to note in the examples above:

- However is preceded by a semi-colon.
- It is followed by a comma.
- It joins two main clauses.
- The semi-colon could be replaced by a full stop and two separate sentences formed.
- Important: It is incorrect to use a comma before 'however' when it is acting as a connective, meaning 'but', and is linking two main clauses.

Compare

The girls are late, however they probably have a good excuse.
 (wrong)

The girls are late; however, they probably have a good excuse.
 (right)

Illustrative Examples

21. They hadn't trained hard, _____ they won.
 A. but B. however C. nevertheless D. All
 Clues: When two opposing/ contrasting statements are mentioned together, 'however' is to mean but or nevertheless (all the same) Answer: D
22. _____ hard he pushed, he just couldn't get the door open.

- A. Although C. In spite of
 B. However D. But

Clues: Although 'however' is often used to connect ideas between sentences, it can also be used to connect ideas within a sentence. When it is followed by an adjective, adverb, or much/ many:

- We just don't have the money to do the work, however necessary you think it is.

- However far it is, I intend to drive there tonight.

Note: necessary and far are adjectives after however.

23. Much of the power of the trade unions has been lost. _____, their political influence should not be underestimated.

- A. Even so
B. Although
C. Even
D. Even though

Clues: 'However' can be replaced by 'even so' when it is used as co-ordinating conjunction/ connective. We can use a full stop or semi-colon before them, and a comma after them then two separate sentences are formed.

24. _____ she held the mirror, she couldn't see the back of her neck.

- A. Nevertheless
B. But
C. In spite of this
D. However

Clues: 'However' is used when it means 'in what every way'. It is followed by a clause (sub + verb).
However he tried his best, he couldn't save the patient.
(However = in what every way)

- ♦ **Note:** 'However' is used with adjective/ adverb to mean 'no matter how'.

However brilliant you may be, you can't know everything (however = no matter how)

The members of the club will disagree with you however well you speak at the meeting.

(Brilliant = adjective; well = adverb after 'however')

25. _____ Well you play a musical instrument, it's always possible to improve.

- A. Although
B. Even so
C. However
D. All

Clues: 'Well' is an adverb, so 'however' should be used.
(See the above) Answer: C

26. We are unlikely ever to find a cure for the common _____ cold, much research is done.

- A. however
B. even so
C. Even if
D. Although

Clues: However + much/ many

Note: In the questions above (Q24-26) we use 'however' to connect ideas in a sentence, not between sentences.

27. It was midday, _____, I put on the light.

- A. Even though
B. However
C. but
D. even so

Clues: 'even so' doesn't mean even though.

Even though: Is a conjunction used to say that a fact doesn't make the rest of the sentence untrue.
It connects ideas within a sentence.

Answer: D

I understand your point of view. _____ I don't

28. _____ I understand your point of view.
A. Although
B. Even if
C. However
D. All

(See the notes) Answer: C

29. Samuel had lived in the village for 10 years, considered him an outsider.

- A. However
B. Nevertheless
C. Because
D. A & B

Clues: Nevertheless/ nonetheless can replace however when used to connect ideas in a sentence.

You've explained your position clearly. Nevertheless, I'm not in a position to help you.

Answer: D

However I am not in a position to help you, you've explained your position clearly. (however: in whatever way)

_____ bad he may be, you can never want to hurt your child.

- A. Although
B. However
C. In spite of
D. Nevertheless

(See the previous Q^s) Answer: B

30. _____ Carefully you drive, you'll probably have an accident eventually.

- A. In spite of
B. Even so
C. However
D. Although

Clues: 'carefully' is an adverb, so however must be used.
When 'however' is used with adverb or adjective, it means 'no matter how'.

Answer: C

Pattern 5:

While and where as

On the one hand and on the other hand

- When we contrast two different but equal ideas, we can use the above words and phrases.
- All are used with clauses.
- Whereas: used to compare or contrast two facts.

Example

Some of the studies show positive results, **whereas** other don't.
My friend is lazy **whereas** his father is intelligent.

☞ **While**: used to contrast two things.

Example

While Fasika is good at science, her sister is completely hopeless.
Fikadu gambled his money **while** Nuria spends on clothes.

- **Note**: In a formal style, **whereas** can be used in the same way as **while**.

Example

The summers here are wet, **while/ whereas** the winters are very dry.
Apes and humans are very different. **Whereas/ while** apes live in trees, humans live on the ground.

- **Note**: **although** can replace **whereas**.

Both are followed by a clause (sub + verb)

although } + clause
whereas }

Both can go **before** two contrasting clauses or **between** them

☞ (Before)

Although most of the boys thought early marriage an issue, the girls didn't.

Whereas most of the boys thought early marriage an issue, the girls didn't.

☞ (between)

Most of the boys thought early marriage an issue, **although** the girls didn't.

Most of the boys thought early marriage an issue, **whereas** the girls didn't.

☞ On one hand and on the other hand:

Like that of while and whereas, they are used to contrast two different but equal ideas. (they introduce clauses of difference)
All can be used interchangeably. (one instead of the other)

Example

☞ The couples are quite different.

On one hand Sisay is gentle and thinking. **On the other hand** Mulunesh is aggressive and naughty.

Or

☞ The couples are quite different.

While/ whereas Sisay is gentle and thinking, Mulunesh is aggressive and naughty.

☞ The couples are quite different. Sisay is gentle and thinking, **whereas/ while** Mulunesh is aggressive and naughty.

Or

☞ The couples are quite different. **On the one hand, whereas/ while** Sisay is gentle and thinking, Mulunesh is aggressive and naughty.

Note: Putting **on the one hand/ on the other hand** with **whereas/ while** brings out the difference more strongly.

Pattern 6:**Yet**

- 'Yet' can mean different things. But as a conjunction, you can use 'yet' to introduce a fact which is rather **surprising**.
- 'Yet' means 'but' in contrast clause.

Example

He beats his wife, **yet** he loves her.

She holds her house, **yet** she can't help regretting it.

It is a small car, **yet** it is surprisingly spacious.

She holds her house, **but** she can't help regretting it.

(for the other uses of 'yet' we'll see in **Adverb & present perfect**)

Illustrative Examples

32. The red pills make me feel sick, _____ the blue ones don't.
- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| A. one the other hand | C. whereas |
| B. in spite of | D. on the one hand |

Answer: C

- **Note**: 'while' can be used instead of 'whereas' without affecting the meaning.

33. Yesterday it was freezing cold, _____ today it is quite warm.
- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| A. whereas | C. although |
| B. while | D. A and B |

Answer: D

- **Note**: Sometimes either **but** or **whereas** is possible.

34. United are top of the league, _____ city are bottom.
- | | | | |
|--------|------------|--------|------------|
| A. but | B. whereas | C. yet | D. A and B |
|--------|------------|--------|------------|

Answer: D

35. People are friendly in the North, to you, _____ in London.
no one speaks.
A. whereas B. although C. yet D. despite
36. The man has donated ten thousand dollar _____ he is not Christian.
_____ for church.
A. but B. yet C. while D. A and B
- Clues: 'yet' is sometimes replaced by 'but' when there is the contrast ideas of statements.

(Read the notes above) Answer: D

5.2. Markers of Clause of Purpose

- We can talk about why something is done by using several different expressions. Purpose can be expressed by: to-infinitives and that-phrases and for, for fear and lest.
 - 'To' groups are: to, in order to, so as to
 - That-phrases are: in order that, so that
- These clauses particularly answer the questions 'what for' and 'for what purpose'
- Purpose can be expressed: by:
 - A. The 'to' alone:
 - To
 - 'To' is the simplest and the most common.
 - Is used as part of the infinitive of a verb.

Example

You go to a library to borrow books. You use a knife to cut things.
Most people work to earn money.

- Note: In these examples the ideas after 'to' are the answers for the ideas before it.

B. in order to / so as to

- Are more formal than 'to'
- And 'in order to' is the more generally useful although 'so as to' is also used. Because 'in order to' can imply either that the subject wants to perform the action or that he/she wants it to happen, and 'so as to' implies only that the subject wants the action to happen.

Example

The government took these measures in order to reduce crime.
He came to Addis Ababa so as to know about Ethiopian cultures.

- 'In order/ so as to' with be and have

Example

Tamirat left early in order/ so as to be at home when he arrived.

Melat gave up work in order/ so as to have more time with her family.

- In order and so as are very common before not to.
- We use this structure to make a negative sentence in purpose-clause.

Example

The land was bought quickly so as not to delay the building work. (NOT: so as to not)

I carried the knife carefully in order not to cut myself. (NOT: in order to not)

- to + noun + preposition

Example

I want a case to keep my records in.

I need a corkscrew to open this bottle with.

(records and bottle are nouns whereas in and with are prepositions)

- Note that here we are talking about a particular purpose.

For a general purpose we use: For + gerund:

Example: This a case for keeping records in.

A corkscrew is a tool for opening bottles.

- C. In order that and so that

- We also use these expressions to talk about purpose.
- So that is more common than in order that.

In order that } + modal

So that } verbs

- When the verb in the main clause is in the present, present perfect or future, so that and in order that are followed by may, can, will, etc.

Example

I arrived early so that/ in order that I may get a good view of the procession.

She is learning English so that/ in order that she can study in Canada.

- We can also use so that/ in order that:

When one person does something so that another person does something else.

Example

I gave her my address **so that** she could contact me.
He wore glasses and a false beard **in order that** nobody would recognize him.

- The negative after **so that/ in order that**:

When the purpose is negative we put the auxiliary verb (will/ would, may/ might, or should) into the negative.
(i.e. **so that/ in order that** won't/ wouldn't, couldn't, mayn't)

Example

I hurried **so that** I won't be late.
(..... because I didn't want to be late)
Leave early **in order that** you won't/don't miss the bus.
I arrived early **so that** I might not miss anything.
He wrote his diary in code **in order that** his wife wouldn't be able to read it.

- ♦ **Note:** 'Shouldn't' and 'wouldn't' would be possible, but not couldn't.
 - Infinitive construction with: **so as not to** and **in order not to** are more natural than **not to** is.
- Be careful with **in order to/ so as to** and **in order that/ so that**.

Don't say

	in order to that
	in order that to
	so that to
	so as that

Say: in order to / in order that

	so that
	so as to

Compare

She stayed at work **in order/ so as** complete the report (wrong)
She stayed at work **in order that/so that** complete the report (wrong)
She stayed at work **in order/so as to** complete the report (right)
She stayed at work **in order/so that** she could complete the report

(right)

	in order	} + to + root verb
Thus,	so as	
	in order	} + that + clause
	so	

D. 'in case', 'lest' and 'for fear'

• In case

- Should, might or the present must be used after **in case** when there is a future reference:

Example

We've installed an extinguisher next to the cooker **in case** there is ever a fire (there should/ might ever be a fire).
I am taking a rain coat with me **in case** I need it.

• lest

- 'Lest' means 'for fear that' and is followed by should, and rarely found except in formal written English.
- Should is optional after **lest** without affecting its meaning.

Example

We have a memorial service every year **lest** we should forget our debt to those who died in battle.

• We can express the above ideas with **so that/ in order that + negative modal**

As: We've a memorial service every year **in order/ so that** we might not forget our debt to those who died in battle.

• For fear

- 'For fear' is usually followed by might, but the same idea can be expressed more easily with **in case + past**

Example

I bought the car at once **for fear** (that) he might change his mind. Or

I bought the car at once **in case** he changed his mind.

• (For the details of 'in case', see unit 1)

E. What.....For

- We can use **what for?** to ask about purpose.

Example

What is this book **for**? ~ It is **for** reading.

What did you do that **for**? ~ **For** painting.

What is the scale **for**? ~ **For** weighing things.

Illustrative Examples

37. You should leave home early _____ late for tomorrow's exam.

A. in order to be C. in order to not be
B. so as not to be D. so that not to be

Clues: The question is about expressing purpose in a negative way.

in order } + not to + v (to not = wrong)
so as

Example: I hurried **so as not to be** late.

I spoke quietly **so as not to frighten** her.

I spoke quietly **in order not to frighten** her. Answer: B

38. We are putting up a notice three weeks in advance enough time to process your travel.

A. so as C. so that
B. in order D. so as that

Clues: **so that/ in order that** + clause (clause = sub + verb)

* **So as that = wrong ; so that = right; so as to = right**

Answer: C

39. We fined him _____ he could learn from his mistakes.

A. so as C. so that
B. because D. so as to

Clues: The second structure is **clause**, so either **in order that** or **so that** can be used.

Answer: C

Note: Fined means **get penalized** (with money)

(see the notes)

40. Dr Fatuma arranged some extra tutorials _____ her students more opportunities to ask questions before the examinations.

A. because of giving C. so to give
B. so as to give D. so that to give

Clues: **so as to** and **in order to** are used with a simple verb

Answer: B

(v1)

157

41. We started early _____ get there before noon.
A. so as to C. so that
B. because to D. so that to

Answer: A

42. You should have all information required _____ complete the form.

A. in order to C. so as
B. as a result D. so that

Answer: A

43. Which is/ are **correct**?

A. Come in quietly **so that** she doesn't hear you.
B. They stayed awake all night **lest** there should be trouble.
C. Trees were planed along the street **so as to** reduce traffic noise.
D. All are possible.

Clues: We use **lest** as a precaution **in case** something unpleasant or unwanted happens.

Answer: D

44. Identify the **mistake**.

A. Let's go to the pool **for** a swim.
B. Let's go to the pool **to** have a swim.
C. This heater is **for** keep the plants warm in winter.
D. He saved the money **so that** he might use it in the future.

Clues: We can use '**for**' with a noun or -ing to say why we do something.

For + noun

For + -ing

To + verb

For + base verb = wrong

She is saving **for** a holiday.

This machine is **for** cutting plastic (NOT: for cut)

This machine is used **to** cut plastic (NOT: to cutting)

Answer: C

45. The staff are working at weekends _____.

A. **so as not to** delay the project any further.
B. **so that** they won't delay the project any further.
C. **lest** they should delay the project any further.
D. All are appropriately expressed.

(the explanation is left for you) Answer: D

46. _____ is this big mirror for?

A. Which B. Why C. What D. How

Chen: We can also use what for? to ask about purpose.

47. I hurried that I wouldn't be late.

A. in order B. so C. so as D. A and B

Chen: When they introduce a clause (sub + verb) 'so' and 'in order' are followed by 'that', and when they introduce a verb, they are followed by 'to'.

*(read the notes) Answer: B

48. Gebena: Why did a friend of yours phoned you?

Declan:

A. to invite me to a party.
B. in order to invite me to a party.
C. for invitation to a party.
D. All are correct.

*(see Q44) Answer: B

49. What is this screw?

A. for B. with C. uses D. of

Chen: what for? to ask for purpose (see Q46)

Answer: A

50. Please, turn down your radio

A. so as not to disturb me.
B. so that not to disturb
C. in order to not disturb
D. not to disturb
E. All are possible

Chen: so that + to (not to) = wrong. The negative with so that/ in order that should be in modal verbs (may not, wouldn't, can't).

As: Please turn down your radio so that you shouldn't disturb me.

• We don't say 'to not'

• We don't use not with to (not to = wrong)

Answer: A

I. Put in 'to' or 'for'

51. I went to a dentist a check-up.
52. We'll need a lot of time make a decision.
53. Do you wear glasses reading?
54. I had to put my glasses read the letter.
55. You need a lot of experiences this job.

159

You need a lot of experiences do this job.

56. The new paint is excellent covering walls.

57. Put in so that/ in order that, so as not to/ in order not to

58. Mesfin sang so badly that I had to look away

59. She left the party quietly have to say goodbye.

60. He bought a truck he could carry out his business.

61. I didn't say anything about Tafese's red nose

62. We had to turn down the television we could hear the doorbell.

III. Put in in order to or in order that

63. He applied for a job he might help his father.

64. He applied for a job help his father.

65. I put the light on I could see where I was going.

66. Betelhem studies encyclopedias she can answer quiz questions.

67. He is going to study the market be more successful.

Answer Keys

51. for	58. so as not to/ in order not to
52. to	59. in order not to/ so as not to
53. for	60. so that/ in order not to
54. to	61. so as not to/ in order not to
55. for	62. in order that/ so that
56. to	63. in order that
57. for	64. in order to
	65. in order that
	66. in order that
	67. in order to

5.3. Markers of Clause of Reason

(adverbial clause of reason/ cause)

- This type of clause answers the question 'why?'.
- In this clause there is always cause and effect relationship.
- Cause/ reason is often stated first and effect is second.
- We often give reason by using markers/ linking words or phrases like: Words Phrases

Words

because

since

for

as

with

Verbs

caused by

resulted from

Phrases

because of

on account of

in view of

due to (the fact that)

owing to

seeing that

seeing as

the reason why

as a result of

- 'Why' asks for a reason. Because gives a reason.

Why are you laughing? Because she has just said something very funny.

- Pattern 1:

because	} + reason clause (sub + verb)
since	
as	

- We can begin a clause of reason with these expressions or in the second half of a sentence.

Example

As/ Because/ Since there was very little support, the strike was not successful.

You won't find many shops open as/ because/ since it's a public holiday.

- The relative position of clause of reason and main clause.

As a general rule, whatever we want to emphasize (reason or main clause) comes at the end.

- We often begin sentences with 'as or since' because the reasons they refer to may be known to the person spoken to and therefore don't need to be emphasized.

Example

As/ Since you can't type the letter yourself, you will have to ask Susan to do it for you.

- 'Because' generally follows the main clause to emphasize a reason which is probably not known to the person spoken to.

Example

Fasil is trying to find a place of his own because he wants to feel independent.

- 'Because' can always be used in place of as, since and for to give reason or reasons, but not often.

More Examples

As it was getting late, I decided I should go home.

Since we have got some time, let's look around the Museum. I took a taxi because I had some luggage.

- Pattern 2:

for	} +	reason
in that		clause
		(sub + verb)

- We also give reasons with these phrases in formal or literary written English. (i.e. They are rather literary)

Example

We must begin planning now, for the future may bring unexpected changes.

The film is unusual in that there are only actors in it.

- Note: 'For' is a formal alternative to 'because'
- 'in that' and in as much as introduce clauses which clarify what has been said by adding detail. (see the examples above)

Example: We hurried on, for it was getting late.

We hurried on because it was getting late.

(But not: in as much as or in that)

- Pattern 3:

for	} +	noun phrase
with		

- We can use for and with followed by a noun phrase to give a reason.
- 'For' has a similar meaning to 'as a result of' and is common in most English style.

Example

She was looking all the better for her stay in hospital.

- (She was looking all the better **because of** her stay in hospital)
- 'with' has a similar meaning to 'because there is/ are'

Example

With so many people ill, I've decided to cancel the meeting.
(Because so many people are ill, I've decided to cancel the meeting)

Pattern 4:

because of	+ Cause (Noun phrase)
as a result of	
on account of	
due to	
owing to	

- These prepositions can also be used to give a reason for something followed by **phrase (noun/ pronoun/ gerund)**
- All expressions are almost the same as 'because of' and can be used interchangeably.

Example

The Prime Minister returned **because of** growing unrest in the country.

The match has been cancelled **because of** the weather.

She retired early **on account of** ill health.

Many houses were damaged **as a result of** the heavy rain.

In view of the test results, we expect the drug to be approved.

Owing to its remote situation, the village has no electricity supply.

The shop was closed **due to** illness.

- Note: 'because of' is the opposite of 'in spite of'
- We stayed in **because of** the rain. (because it was raining)
- We went out **in spite of** the rain. (although it was raining)
- Note: We don't use **because** alone before a noun/ noun phrase.
- We were delayed **because** there was an accident.
(NOT: because an accident)
- We were delayed **because of** an accident.
(NOTE: because an accident)
- We were delayed **because of** there was an accident.

(wrong)

- Compare **because of/ due to and owing to:**
He was unable to run **because of/ due to/ owing to** a leg injury.

We have less money **because of/ due to/ owing to** budget cuts.

- Note: In current English we usually avoid **owing to** directly after a form of be (is, was, were,)

- The company's success is **owing to** the new director.

(wrong)

- The company's success is **due to** the new director. (right)

- However, **owing to** is used after **be + adverb degree** such as **entirely, largely, mainly, partly:**

- The low election turnout was partly **due to/ owing to** the bad weather.

- Note: We can often use either **it was due to that** or **it was owing to that**

- It was **owing to** his encouragement that she applied for the job.

- It was **due to** his encouragement that she applied for the job.

- The **reason why:** is also used to introduce a reason.

- The **reason why** he has come is to offer me.

- The **reason why** she way went to England was to learn a modern English communication.

- **due to + the fact that + cause clause (sub + verb)**

Example

- Flooding in many areas is **due to the fact that** too many trees have been cut down.

- I am unable to run the race **due to the fact that** I am ill.

Pattern 6:

caused by	(cause)
resulted from	+ noun phrase
a result of	(noun)

- Cause and result can be verb expressions of a **reason clause**.

Example

Famine is caused by drought. (reason)

Drought causes famine. (result)

Global warming is resulted from too much carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. (cause/ reason)

Too much carbon dioxide in the atmosphere causes/ results in global warming. (result/ effect)

Flooding in many areas is caused by/ resulted from deforestation. (cause/ reason)

Deforestation causes/ results in/ leads to flooding in many areas. (result/ effect)

Failure is caused by/ resulted from laziness. (cause)

Laziness/ Being lazy causes/ results in/ leads to failure. (reason)

Instability is a result of/ due to disagreement. (cause)

Disagreement causes/ results in instability. (effect)

Carbon emissions is caused by/ resulted from/a result of the burning of fossil fuel. (cause)

The burning of fossil fuel causes/ results in/ leads to carbon emission. (effect/ result)

Illustrative Examples

68. _____ you know what we are getting at, I should tell you everything.

- A. Since C. Because of
B. While D. As a result

Clues: We can use since/as/ because + clause at the beginning of a sentence to introduce a cause/ reason.

'Because of' is used with noun/ noun phrase.

(See the notes) Answer: A

69. _____ it was too dark to go on so far, we camped there for night.

- A. Because of C. As if
B. So that D. Since

Clues: Since means because. (See Q68 above) Answer: D

70. There was flooding _____ heavy rain fell all night.

- A. because C. due to
B. because of D. owing to

Clues: because of, due to and owing to are used with a noun/ noun phrase, not with a clause. They are

almost the same in expressing a reason/ cause clause.

The structure after dash is a clause (sub + verb) Answer: A

Note: due to + the fact that + clause can replace because/ since/ as

As: There was flooding due to the fact that heavy rain fell all night.

71. The concert had to be cancelled _____ the fact that the star guest was ill.

- A. in spite of C. so
B. due to D. there for Answer: B

72. My mother is worrying. She has lost her mobile.

These sentences can also be expressed as:

- A. My mother is worrying because she has lost her mobile.
B. My mother is worrying as she has lost her mobile.
C. My mother is worrying since she has lost her mobile.
D. All are correct.

Clues: Because/ since/as + clause = reason/ cause
(the details is left for you)

Answer: D

73. He was given many drugs, _____ his condition grew worse.

- A. that B. for C. but D. then

Clues: 'For' can be used to introduce a clause of reason.

{ On one hand for + noun phrase = because of }

{ On the other hand for + clause = because }

Answer: B

74. Her death was _____ natural causes.

- A. because of B. since C. owing to D. due to

Clues: due to/ owing to is to mean 'because of' followed

by noun phrase.

Answer: D

75. She claims her illness is entirely _____ stress at work.

- A. due to C. with
B. owing to D. A and B

Clues: Despite the rule stated in Q73 above, 'owing to' is used after be + a degree adverb such as entirely, mainly, largely, partly

Example: The popularity of the restaurant is largely due to/ owing to its central location.

Note: entirely & largely are emphatic adverb.

76. It has been raining all week. _____ the floods, many houses damaged.
 A. Due to C. Because of
 B. Owing to D. On account of
 E. All

Answer: D

77. I couldn't hear what Alem was saying because of the noise.
 ☞ The other ways of expressing these sentences is:

Answer: E

- A. I couldn't hear what Alem was saying with the noise.
 B. I couldn't hear what Alem was saying for the noise.
 C. I couldn't hear what Alem was saying due to the noise.
 D. All are possible expressions.

With/ for/ due to + noun phrase ☞ (read the notes) Answer: D

78. _____ it is your birthday, I'll buy you lunch.

- A. Seeing that C. Due to
 B. Because of D. On account of

Clues: Seeing that and seeing as are used in informal English to mean because to introduce 'a reason':

Seeing that/ as + clause taking the either position.

Answer: A

79. I suggested we all go on holiday together _____ we get on so well.

- A. seeing as C. due to
 B. seeing that D. A and B

☞ (See Q77) Answer: D

80. The film is unusual _____ it features only four actors.

- A. in that C. for that
 B. in as much as D. A and B

Clues: We use in that and in as much as (less formal) to introduce a reason clause which clarify what has been said by adding details.

☞ (Read its notes) Answer: D

81. Identify the mistake.

- A. I finished early because I worked fast.
 B. I were late owing to the rain.
 C. Don't break that bottle for the acid in it is dangerous.
 D. The mistake was due to he was thinking about something else.

Clues: A noun/ pronoun is used after owing to and due to, but in choice (D) is a clause after 'due to' Answer: D

82. I couldn't speak to Belay _____
 A. for his phone was engaged
 B. with his phone was engaged
 C. since his phone was engaged
 D. as his phone was engaged
 E. All are possible expressions of a reason.

Clues: All expressions in these sentences can stand for because followed by clause.

Answer: E

83. Heart disease _____ drinking alcohol and smoking.
 A. is caused by C. resulted from
 B. a result of D. All are correct

Answer: D

The above sentence can be changed into effect clause as:

As: Drinking too much alcohol and smoking causes/ leads to/ results in/ means heart disease.

1. Put in the appropriate markers of reason clause

84. I had to drive in dark glass _____ the bright sunlight.
 85. I got a job as a street sweeper, _____ my money running out.
 86. I felt a lot fitter _____ all the exercises I was doing.
 87. You can go home _____ you have finished the work.
 88. _____ the power cut, the shop will close early.
 89. The accident was _____ over-speed.
 90. He opened a second shop _____ the success of his first.
 91. _____ the snow, I might not be able to get to the airport.

Answer Key

83. because of/ owing to 87. Owing to/ Because of
 84. with/ for 88. due to
 85. because of/ an account of 89. on account of/ because of
 86. because/ since/ as 90. Because of/ Due to/ Owing to

5.4. Markers of clauses of Result

[adverbial clause of result/ effect]

- These clauses describe consequences/ effects.
- Result is caused by reason, or reason leads to result.

- Result often occurs second.

☞ Clause of result is introduced by:

<i>so</i>	<i>therefore</i>
<i>so that</i>	<i>as a result</i>
<i>such a that</i>	<i>for this reason</i>
<i>such that</i>	<i>consequently</i>
<i>too to</i>	<i>thus</i>
<i>enough to</i>	<i>hence</i>

◆ Pattern 1: So + result clause

- a comma is used before 'so'
- The pronoun/ subject is repeated after 'so'

Example

He couldn't find his pen. He wrote in pencil.

☞ He couldn't find his pen, so he wrote in pencil. (result)

He wrote in pencil because he couldn't find his pen. (reason)

We have got enough time. We can go now.

☞ We have got enough time, so we can go now. (result)

As/ since we've got enough time, we can go now. (reason)

- Note: When there is no consequence (so + adjective) without 'that'

She was so angry. The day is so horrid. I am so tired.

We were so confused.

- Note: For the other uses of so, see comparison and addition to remarks

◆ Pattern 2: So + adj / adv + that = 'as a result'

Here, the result is understood after 'that'

Example

His reactions are quick. No one can match with him.

☞ His reactions are so quick that no one can match with him.
(quick = adjective, and is to answer how (quick)?)

He reacts so quickly that no one can match with him.
(quickly = adverb, and it is to answer how (quickly)?)

I am so hungry that I could eat a horse.

Inversion after so + adjective + that

- We can use so + adjective at the beginning of a clause to give special emphasis to the adjective.
- When we do this, the subject and first auxiliary are inverted.

Example

So successful was her business; that Yanet was able to retire at the age of 50.

(= Her business was so successful that she was able to retire at the age of 50)

So terrible was the storm that whole roofs were ripped off.

(= The storm was so terrible that whole roofs were ripped off)

So tired is I that I couldn't go out with you.

(= I am so tired that I couldn't go out with you.)

☞ Result clause can also be used after much, many, few, little, etc.

So + much/ many/ few/ little + noun + that

So + much/ little + mass noun + that

So + many/ few + unit noun + that

Example

There was so much noise that I couldn't study.

He saved so little money that he didn't go picnic.

They bought so many shops that they soon become rich.

There were so few students that the teacher didn't give a test.

☞ We can also use: So + adjective + a + noun

This structure is not very common but may be met in literature, and only possible when a noun is preceded by a/ an.

Example

He is so strong a man that he couldn't be defended.

(NOT: so a strong man that)

Bontu is so brilliant a girl that every teachers admires her.

(NOT: so a brilliant girl that)

It was so hursh an hour that we couldn't get a taxi.

- Note: a/ an shouldn't be used with plural/ mass noun.

Don't say: They were so co-operative a people that we stayed with them.

Say: They were so co-operative that we stayed with them.

◆ Pattern 3:

Such a/an + adj + singular noun + that
Such + adjective + plural noun + that
Such + adjective + mass noun + that

Such a/an + adj + singular unit noun

Example

He is **such a marvelous joker** that you can't help laughing.
 It was **such a hot day** that nobody could do any work.
 They've got **such a nice house** that I always love staying there.

Such + a lot of
 a large number of } + Plural / mass noun
 a large amount of }

Example

He ate **such a lot of cakes** that he was ill (NOT: so a lot of)
 But: She spent **so much money** that she regretted it after wards.
 (NOT: such much)

There were **such a large number of people** that I couldn't see her.

(NOT: so a large number of people)

But: There were **so many people** that I couldn't see her.
 You wasted **such a lot of time** here that you didn't get to there on time.

There was **such a lot of rain** that we couldn't go out.

But: There was **so much rain** that we couldn't go out.

◆ Note: Such a = so + adj + a + singular noun

He is **such a good man** = He is **so good a man**

(NOT: a such good) (NOT: so a good man)

It is **such a nice room** = It's **so nice a room**

(NOT: a such nice room) (NOT: so a nice room)

⇒ Note these sentences with **long, far, many/ much** and **a lot of**
 It's **so long** since I saw you. It's **such a long time** since I saw you.

Why are we **so far** from the beach. It's **such a long way** to the beach.

There were **so many people**. There **such a lot of people**.
 You waste **so much time**. You waste **such a lot of time**.
 (see the examples above)

- So and **such** (when heavily stressed in speech) can be used without **that**.

Compare

I like Solomon. He is **so friendly**.

I like Solomon. He is **such a friendly person**.

We enjoyed our holiday. It was **so relaxing**.

We enjoyed our holiday. We had **such a good**.

The children made **such a mess**.

It was **such a stupid story**.
 She is **such a fool**. } no consequence

Such + adj + plural/ mass noun + that

Here, such a can't be used.

Example

These are **such good books** that I couldn't put down.
 (books = unit plural)

They are **such wonderful players** that no one can beat them.

But: He is **such a wonderful player** that no one can beat him.

They = players = unit plural (**such**)

He = player = unit singular (**such a**)

I had **such bad luck** that you wouldn't believe it.

luck = mass/ uncountable noun.

It is **such nice weather** that we can't stay indoors.

weather = mass/ uncountable noun.

◆ Note: such + abstract noun + that

The soldiers fought with **such courage** that they got medals.

(They are **such courage soldiers** that they got medals.)

I felt **such excitement** that I couldn't stop praising.

⇒ Like **so**, **such** can be inverted (can come at the beginning)

Example

A. **Such** is his dominance in the sport that he hasn't lost a match for over three years.

B. **Such** was the strength of the earth quake that few buildings were left standing in the town.

C. **So boring** was the lesson that most of the students went to Sleep.

(B = It was such a strong earthquake that few buildings were
(C = The lesson was so boring that most students)

♦ Pattern 4:

too to
enough to

♦ too + adjective/adverb + to + verb

☞ This structure is used to express a result in a negative way.

Example

- ☞ We arrived too late to have dinner.
(We arrived so late that we couldn't have dinner)
- ☞ It is too cold to play tennis.
(It is so late that we couldn't play tennis)
- ☞ The wallet is too heavy to have in my pocket.
(The wallet is so heavy that I can't have in my pocket.)
- ☞ He spoke too quickly to understand.
(He spoke so quickly that I couldn't understand.)

♦ too + adjective/ adverb + for + object + to-infinitive without affecting the meaning with the above pattern.

Example

The run way is too short for planes to land.
It is too cold for us to play outside
The exam was too difficult for me to finish on time.

♦ Adjective/ adverb + enough + to-infinitive

This structure is not the same as the two in the above which expresses a result in a negative way. This rather introduces positive ideas.

Example

- ☞ She is old enough to do what she wants.
(She is old enough, so she can do what she wants.)
(She is so old that she can do what she wants.)
- ☞ She drives fast enough to win the competition.
(She drives so fast that she wins the competition.)
(She is such a fast driver that she wins the competition.)

♦ enough + for + object + to-infinitive

Example

It is late enough for us to stop work.
The river is shallow enough for me to cross.
(= so we can cross it.)
The river is too deep for us to cross.
(= The river is so deep that we can't cross.)

☞ Extreme points

- We can modify too with much, a lot, a little, a bit or rather.
As: much too a little too confident
a lot too big a bit too soon
far too young rather too often
- Don't confuse 'too' and too much. We don't use too much before an adjective without a noun, or an adverb.
You are too kind to me (NOT: too much kind to me)
I arrived too early (NOT: too much early)
- Don't confuse too and very. 'Too' means 'more than enough', 'more than necessary'

Compare

- He is a very intelligent child.
- He is too intelligent for his class – he is not learning anything.
- It was very cold, but we went out.
- It was too cold to go out, so we stayed at home.
- Note: We'll see more about enough & too in adverb degree.

♦ Pattern 5:

therefore
for this reason } + clause of result as a result
consequently

- We can use either a full stop or a semi-colon before these markers of result. They are always placed at the beginning of a result clause they introduce. They can come at the end of a clause. We put a comma after them.
- All are the same in expressing result/ effect clause.

Example

There was no heating in the building. As a result, the workers

had to be sent home. (or the workers had to be sent home as a **result**) Someone switched the freezer. **Consequently**, all the food was spoilt.

The river water was polluted. **For this reason**, the villagers became ill.

He didn't come to the interview. He didn't get the job **therefore/as a result**. (at the end)

- Note: We can also use **therefore** after a subject

Example

The road was under water. **Therefore**, the police closed it to traffic. **Or**

The road was under water. The police **therefore** closed it to traffic.

The guest hasn't arrived yet. We have **therefore** decided to postpone. (or: **Therefore**, we have decided)

- Note that the different position of **therefore**:

At the beginning
After the first word / phrase
Before the main verb

Look at: There is foggy weather at Ras Dasha.

The plane, **therefore**, has been diverted. **Or**

..... the plane has **therefore** been diverted. **Or**

..... **Therefore**, the plane has been diverted.

- Compare **therefore/consequently/as a result/for this reason**
With **so, so..... that, such a..... that, enough.....to**
Oluma is a brilliant student. **Therefore/As a result/For this reason/Consequently**, he has been sent scholarship. **Or**
Oluma is a brilliant student; **therefore/as a result/consequently**, he has been sent scholarship. **Or**
Oluma is a brilliant student, **so** he has been sent scholarship. **Or**
Oluma is **so brilliant** that he has been sent scholarship. **Or** Oluma is **such a brilliant student** that he's been sent scholarship. **Or**
Oluma is **so brilliant** a student **that** he's been sent scholarship. **Or**
Oluma is **brilliant enough** to have been sent scholarship.

Pattern 6:

Hence
Thus } + result clause

- Both are to mean **therefore/ as a result/ for this reason**.

Hence:

The computer has become cheaper and **hence** available to a greater number of people.

(The computer has become cheaper. **Therefore/ For this reason**, it is available to a greater number of people)

We respect they are trying to hide something, **hence** the need for an independent inquiry.

Thus:

He failed. **Thus** he must reply.

(He failed, **so** he must reply)

He is the eldest son and **thus** heir to the title.

(He is the eldest son. **As a result**, he heirs to the title)

Illustrative Examples

92. She has won a million Birr in lottery, _____ some business. She is going to start

A. so B. because C. so as to D. so that

Clues: The first sentence is cause and the second should be a result. When the comma is used before a result connector, we need to use so after it.

- He didn't study hard, **so** he failed the exam. (**result**)
- He failed the exam **because** he didn't study hard. (**cause**)

Answer: A

93. It was _____ boring lecture that everyone fell a sleep.

A. so B. too C. such D. such a

Clues: If there is a unit noun after adjective, we use **such a + that** to express result.

Example. She got **such nice welcome** **that** she almost cried.

Answer: D

94. The film was **so good** that I saw it twice.

• This is the same as:

A. It was **such a good film** that I saw it twice.

- B. It was **so good** a film **that** I saw it twice.
 C. The film was good, **so** I saw it twice.
 D. All are possible.

• **Points to note about:**
such and so.

- **(so) Don't say:** It is **such small** that you can't see it.
Say: It is **so small** that you can't see it.
 • **(such) Don't say:** I've never seen a **so large** animal before.
Say: I've never seen **such a large** animal before.

• **Such a = so..... a (such a + adj = so + adj + a + noun)**

Example: She is **such a pretty girl** that all people love her.

She is **so pretty a girl** that all people love her.

She is a pretty girl, **so** all loves her.

Answer: D

95. I didn't know you had _____ nice friends.
 A. so B. such C. such a D. too

Clues: We use **such** before **adjective (+ noun)**. **A/an** comes after **such**.

We use **so** before an **adjective** (without a **noun**), or an **adverb**.

• She is **such a beautiful girl**. (singular)

• They are **such clever students** (plural)

(**Friends** = is plural noun in Q94 above)

Answer: B

96. I know your country, which is _____.
 A. such beautiful C. so beautiful
 B. such a beautiful D. more beautiful

☞ (See the above notes) **Answer: C**

97. We were tired. We went to bed.

☞ **Can be joined as:**

- A. We were **so tired** that we went to bed.
 B. We went to bed **because** we were tired.
 C. We were tired. **As a result**, we went to bed.
 D. All are possible.

Answer: D

98. We got good seats **as a result of** arriving early.

☞ **Can be expressed as:**

- A. We arrived **so early** that we got good seats.
 B. We arrived early **so that** we could get good seats.
 C. We arrived **such** early that we could get good seats.
 D. A and B are correct

Answer: A

99. He couldn't find a cigarette shop anywhere in the long street. He decided, _____, to open a tobaccoist's shop.

A. so B. therefore C. so that D. too

Clues: We use **therefore/as a result** in different position to express a result clause. ☞ (see pattern 5)

Answer: B

100. _____ alike were the twins that even their parents couldn't tell them apart.

A. So that B. Such C. So D. Too

Clues: In a result clause, **so** and **such** can be used at the beginning of a sentence, and we say that they are **inverted (inversion)** see conditional clause.

Example

So unlikely did his story sound, **that** no one believed him.

(He did his story sound **so unlikely** that no one believed him)

Answer: C

101. _____ is the demand for the book that shops all over the country have sold out.

A. Such B. Too C. For D. As a result

Clues: '**such + be**' at the beginning is to emphasize the extent or **degree of something**.

• **Such is the popularity** of the play that the theatre is likely to be full every night.

(The play is **so popular** that/ It was **such a popular** play that)

Answer: A

102. He ate _____ a lot that he was ill.

A. so B. such C. too D. much

Clues: As a rule, **so** and **such** can be used with **quantifiers**

Such + a large number of

a lot of

a large amount of

} + mass / plural + that noun

(See the notes) **Answer: B**

103. Nasredine spent _____ much money that he regretted it afterwards.

A. so B. such C. too D. very

Clues:

so + much } + uncountable noun + that
 little }
 so + many } + uncountable noun + that
 few }

104. The girl was _____ that all the men in the village wanted to marry her. Answer: A
- A. such a beautiful C. such a beauty
 B. so beauty D. so a beautiful

Explanations

We can leave out the adjective with nouns of a certain kind.

such (a) + noun + that
 = such (a) + adj + noun + that
 = so + adj + that

Example:

- You are all **such** fool **that** I'm not surprised she won't talk to you.
 (You are all **such** foolish guys **that** I'm not surprised she won't talk to you.)
 (You are all **so** foolish **that** I'm not surprised she won't talk to you.)
- The information was of **such** importance **that** I went to see him as soon as I could.
 (It was **such** important information **that** I went to see him as soon as I could)
 (The information was **so** important **that** I went to see him as soon as I could)

- * Note: fool and importance are nouns used after such, and foolish and important are adjectives used after such and so in different ways, but the same meaning.

105. This water is clean _____ to swim in.
- A. enough B. too C. more D. so
- Clue: The other connector to mark the result clause is enough.
- adjective + enough + to-infinitive

i.e. enough goes after adjectives & adverbs.

It is to emphasize the adjective which comes before it.

Answer: A

Example

Tadiyos is **clever enough** to pass the exam.

(Tadiyos is **so** clever **that** he can pass the exam)

- Q104 can be expressed as: This water is **too** dirty to swim in.
 (This water is not **clean enough** to swim in)

106. She is not **old enough** to get married.

☞ This means:

- A. She is **too** young to get married.
 B. She is **so** young **that** she can't get married.
 C. She is **such** a young girl **that** she can't get married.
 D. All are correct.

Answer: D

Extreme points:

- Note the difference between **adj + enough + to** and **too + adj + to**
 It is **not wide enough to** = it is **too narrow to**
 It is **not near enough to** = it is **too far to**
 It is **not light enough to** = it is **too rude to**
 She is **not polite enough to** = she is **too rude to**

107. Nobody could move the piano. It was too heavy.

☞ This is the same as:

- A. The piano was **too** heavy to move.
 B. The piano wasn't **light enough to** move.
 C. The piano was **so** heavy **that** nobody could move it.
 D. It was **such** a heavy piano **that** nobody could move it.
 E. All are correct expressions

(See Q104/105) Answer: E

- L. Put in 'so' or 'such'

108. The weather was _____ cold **that** all the football matches were cancelled.
 109. Their garden is _____ beautiful.
 110. They have got _____ a nice house **that** I always love staying there.
 111. It was _____ a hot film **that** I went to see it three times.
 112. The book was _____ a boring **that** I stopped reading it.
 113. I don't know why she talks in _____ loud voice.

II. Put in 'enough' or 'too'

114. The shirt is _____ big for me. I need a smaller size.
 115. He wasn't experienced _____ for the job.
 116. Let's get a taxi. It's _____ far to walk home from here.
 117. This coat isn't warm _____ to wear in winter.
 118. Some things are _____ small to see without a microscope.

Suggested Answer (107-117)

- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| 107. so | 113. too |
| 108. so | 114. enough |
| 109. such | 115. too |
| 110. such | 116. enough |
| 111. such | 117. too |
| 112. such | |

5.5. Markers of Clauses of Time

- These clauses broadly answer the question 'when?'
- And can be introduced by the following markers/ conjunctions

<i>when</i>	<i>now</i>	<i>once</i>
<i>After</i>	<i>during</i>	<i>since</i>
<i>As</i>	<i>until/</i>	<i>the moment</i>
<i>as long as</i>	<i>till</i>	<i>immediately</i>
<i>as soon as</i>	<i>while</i>	<i>directly</i>
<i>before</i>	<i>whenever</i>	<i>.etc.</i>
<i>by the time</i>	<i>sooner</i>	

- We generally use a comma when the adverbial clause comes first, but not after.

Example

After she got married, Adanech changed completely.
 You didn't look very well **when** you got up this morning.
 I pulled a muscle **as** I was lifting a heavy suitcase.
 You can keep these records **as long as** you like.
Once you have seen one penguin, you've seen them all.
 He hasn't stopped complaining **since** he got back from his holidays.
 We always have to wait **until/till** the last customer has left.

• Tenses in adverbial clauses of time:

(No future after temporals)

When the time clause refers to the future, we normally use the simple present after: **as soon as, before, after, by the time, directly, immediately, the moment, till/until and when.**
 This is when we expect a simple future or we use the simple perfect where we might expect the future perfect. These two tenses are often interchangeable after temporal conjunction.

Example

When he arrives, he will tell us all about the match.
 (NOT: When he will)
 Before he arrives, I will give the children their tea.
 (NOT: before he will)
 I will go shopping **as soon as** it stops raining.
 (NOT: **as soon as** it will)
 Let's wait here **until** the teacher comes.
 (NOT: **until** the teacher will)
 Wherever you go, you'll find Coca-Cola.
 (NOT: wherever you will go,)

- Note: The continuous tense can, of course, be used in time clauses when it indicates a continuous action:
 - While they are playing, we will go to the beach.
 (while they are playing = during this time)
 - The future perfect changes to the present perfect, and the future perfect continuous changes to the perfect continuous:

Example:

As soon as I have finished, I'll give you a call.
 The moment we have decorated the house, we can move in.
 Once/ when I have taken shower, I'll be in my bed.
 Now that we have done the exam, we'll go swimming.
 Once you have tasted our coffee, you won't buy another brand.
 Once you see how good it is, you'll be convinced.
 (present tense)
 (once = when/ as soon as)

- Adverbial clause of time (past reference)

To say when something happened in the past, we use joining words/ markers (conjunctions) like:

(when, after, before, till, etc. see the table above 5.5)

Example

I lost a lot of weight when I was ill.

The building had already burnt down by the time the fire brigade arrived.

We realized that something had gone wrong as soon as we saw him run towards us.

I phoned home immediately after I arrived in the airport building.

5.6. Markers of Clauses of Place

(adverbial clause of place)

- Are used to say where something happens/ happened
- These clauses answer the question 'where?'
- They are introduced by the conjunctions/ connectors:

<i>where</i>	<i>anywhere</i>
<i>wherever</i>	<i>everywhere</i>

- Adverbial clause of place normally com after the main clause:
 - You can't camp where/ wherever/ anywhere you like these days.
 - The dog follows me wherever I go.
- Note: Anywhere, everywhere and wherever (but not usually 'where') can begin a sentence, depending on the emphasis we wish to make:
 - Everywhere Melat goes, she's mistaken for her ex-friend.
- Where generally refers to a definite but unspecified place.
 - The Church was built where there had once been a Roman temple.
- Note: wherever, anywhere and everywhere suggest 'anyplace'.
 - With a special train ticket, you can travel wherever/anywhere/everywhere you like in Europe for just over £ 100.

Illustrative Examples

119. I won't know if I've got into university _____ I get my exam results.
- A. until B. when C. as soon as D. All
- Clues: Until and till mean the same. They are used in the same way, except that we prefer until in more formal

situations.

Until/ till = time up to (something happens/ happened)

Answer: A

120. Identify the wrong expression?

- A. I'd reached the school before the rain started.
 B. I'd reached the school when the rain started.
 C. I'd reached the school till the rain started.
 D. All are meaningful.

Clues: before and when introduce a clause of time, if the verb of the main clause denotes an action completed before that of the time clause.

(See Q118 above) Answer: C

121. I know she will phone as soon as I _____ to bed.
- A. will go B. may go C. go D. would go

Clues: We often use present tense instead of will after when, before, after, until, as soon as

Example

I will see you before I go (NOT: will go) Answer: C
 You won't get in until you buy (NOT: will buy)

122. You will feel better after you _____ to eat.
- A. have something C. will have something
 B. have had something D. A and B

Clues: We can use present (perfect) after when /after/ until

- I will come as soon as/ when I finish/ have finished.
- (But not will finish) Answer: D

123. _____ he phones, I will give him your message.

- A. As soon as C. While Answer: A
 B. Until D. None

124. This is the exact spot _____ the accident happened.

- A. when C. that
 B. where D. which

Clues: Adverbial clause of place is introduced by where, wherever.

Answer: B (See the notes)

125. You are not allowed to park _____ you like.

- A. somewhere C. anywhere Answer: C
 B. nowhere D. all

Clues: All are markers of clause of place, but as the sentence presents negative ideas, anywhere should be

used.

- **Anywhere** = it doesn't matter where (any place)
- **Everywhere** = all places

126. Some television program are familiar _____ you go in the world. Answer: C

- A. everywhere C. somewhere
B. anywhere D. nowhere

Clues: everywhere = wherever = at all parts of the world.

127. Let's put the television set in a place _____ everyone can see it. Answer: A

- A. anywhere C. where
B. everywhere D. somewhere

- We say: a place where something is. Answer: C
A time when something happens. (see the notes)

128. Please sit _____ you can find a chair.

- A. whatever C. anywhere
B. wherever D. whenever Answer: B

129. You can't camp _____ you like these days.

- A. where C. anywhere
B. wherever D. all

Clues: depend on the context (ideas), we can use the same expression with the same meaning. Answer: D

I. Put in the necessary markers of time clause in the brackets

130. He won't get any money _____ he finishes the work properly. (As long as, until, when)

131. Can you watch the kids _____ I'm out. (while, till, as)

132. _____ my visit in Bishoftu, I enjoyed with the lakes beauty. (When, during, once)

133. I know she will Phone _____ I go to bed. (as soon as, after, for)

134. _____ finish the report, I'll ask you too read it. (when, after, since)

Answer Key:

129. until/till

130. While

131. During

132. as soon as

133. When

5.7 Markers of Choice/Alternative

- These types of connectors are to talk about an alternative between **two** possibilities (and sometimes more than two)
- They are also Known as alternative or disjunctive conjunctions.

These are:

Nor	whether.....or
Or	either.....or
Else	neither.....nor
Otherwise	

Answer: C

- Nor, or and else are called co-ordinating conjunctions whereas whether...or, either...or and neither...nor are correlative conjunctions and join nouns, verbs or other kids of expressions.

A. 'or, else, otherwise'

You must do the work, else you'll lose the job. You must tell me the truth, or I can't help you.

You must begin the work today, or you will not finish it in time.

Put that down, or else I'll smack you.

Be there on time, otherwise you'll create a bad impression you

B. 'nor'

- Is used after **neither** (as; neither...nor) or after a negative statement, to add something else that the negative statement applies to.

Example

He is not my friend nor my relative. She is not a teacher nor a typist.

C. 'neither....nor'

- Used to indicate that a negative statement refers to two or more things or people.
- Used to join two negative ideas (is the opposite of both.....and)
- Means not this and not that (none of the two alternatives)

{i.e. If the second subject is singular, the singular verb is used; if it is plural, the plural verb is used.

• With subject:

Example

{ Alem wasn't there. Kasahun wasn't there }
{ Alem and Kasahun weren't there }

- ✗ Neither Alem nor Kasahun was here (Not: Were) The director and the teachers don't go to the party.
- ✗ Neither the director nor the teachers go to the party (Not: goes) The group leader and the members don't know the answer.
- ✗ Neither the group leader nor the members don't know the answer. (Not: doesn't)

• With verb

Example

She neither loved him nor liked to marry him.

Neither borrower, nor a lender be (inversion)

He can speak neither English nor French.

She neither liked nor respected her husband.

He can neither read nor write.

- ♦ Note: She said she would contact me but she neither wrote nor phoned.

Neither and nor are always used before a main verb if there is no modal verb (can, should, may,) and if there is no an object we don't use a negative structure with neither....nor because it introduces a negative choice between things.

Compare

Don't say: The man is neither the seller nor the owner.

Say: The man is neither the seller nor the owner.

Don't say: She never neither lie nor disobey her parents.

Say: She neither lie nor disobey her parents.

- Neither... nor is always with an affirmative words
- Note: In an informal style, we can use a plural verbs after two subject joined by neithernor.
 - Neither Abel nor his sister were at home (informal)
 - Neither Able nor his sister was at home (formal)
 - Were refers to 'Able and his sister'
 - Was refers to 'his sister'

D. 'either.....or'

- Refers to one or the other of two possible alternatives.
- This or that one (But not both)
- One of the two; the opposite of none of the two
- Like that of neither....nor, the verb agrees with the second subject
- It always introduces a positive ideas, not a negative as neither....nor does.

With subjects

Examples

Either the station or the cinema is a good place to meet.

Either teachers or the principal is to blame for the accident.

Either the president or his representatives are to attend the meeting.

- Note: In an informal style, we can use a plural verb after two subject joined by either.....or.

• Either Chala or Tolosa were at the market. (informal)

• Either the director or his deputy leads the meeting. (Informal)

- But if the last subject is plural, we always use a plural verb and if the last item is singular and previous item plural, we can use either singular or plural.

- Either the students or the teacher is late to attend the meeting.

With verbs

Examples

You must either return my money or sell your house to me.

You must either take up this job or continue your studies.

Selam is either a typist or a teacher.

He should come either today or tomorrow.

I can either have tea or coffee.

Either you leave this house or I'll call the police.

I don't speak either Tigreigna or Somali.

If you want ice-cream, you can have either lemon, coffee or vanilla.

- ✗ (for either of /neither of, see Quantifiers)

E. 'whether.....or'

- Is used to express a doubt or choice between two possibilities/alternatives.

Example

He seemed undecided whether to go or stay.

I am not sure **whether** she will get the job or she will have to continue teaching.
I don't know **whether** he'd done it all himself or someone had helped him.

- Used to show that something is true in either of two cases (**whether.....or not**)

Example

You are entitled to a free gift **whether** you accept our offer of insurance or not.

Whether or not we are successful, we can be sure that we did our best.

It remains to be seen **whether or not** this idea can be put into practice.

I can't tell **whether** she loves me or not.

I don't tell know **whether or not** the boss is coming.

(= **whether** the boss is coming or not)

(For more details, see unit one-if /whether)

Illustrative Examples

135. She has been remember which (UEE) _____ to Sweden.
Finland; I don't exactly.

- A. eitheror
B. neither.....nor
C. both .. and
D. not only.... but also

Example: I am not sure where he's from. He's **either** Kenyan or Sudan.

Answer: A

136. If you are in a hurry, you will have to take a plane _____ the car will arrive on time in the city. (UEE)

- A. Bothe /and
B. Not only/but also
C. Either/or
D. Neither/nor the train

Clues: Why does the speaker suggest somebody to take a phone if they are in hurry? Because it is the fastest means of transportation of all. The train and the car are not so fast as a plane.

Answer: D

Example: Use my laptop for your presentation.

The one you've got is **neither** active nor updated.

137. Kasa: Do you want tea or coffee?

Reda: _____. I really don't mind.

- A. Neither
B. Both
C. Either
D. Only tea

Clues: To express choice between two possibilities, we can use **either** alone (without 'or'/noun).
When Reda says, 'I don't mind', he means 'it doesn't matter which' (tea or coffee)

Example: Would you like sand which or cake? I don't mind. **Either**.
Which one do you want, sand which or cake? **Neither**.

Answer: C

138. You are not right. You are not wrong.

We can express these as:

- A. You are **neither** right nor wrong.
B. You aren't **neither** right nor wrong.
C. You are **either** right or wrong.
D. You are **neither** right or wrong.

Clues: Negative word + **neither/nor** is not correct.

Neither should be used with **nor**, not with **or**.

Answer: A

139. Identify the 'wrong' statement.

- A. Gelaye speaks **neither** English nor French.
B. I didn't met **neither** Alemu nor Tegegne.
C. I don't remember **either** her name or her age.
D. **Either** you leave her at once or I'll call the police.

Clues: Negative words + **neither/nor** is a wrong expression.

Answer: B

140. She is not a nurse _____ a doctor.

- A. and B. nor C. but D. or

Clues: We can use 'nor' after 'neither' or after negative statement.

Example: He is not my friend nor my relative.

(= He is **neither** my friend nor my relative) Answer: B

141. Which is correct?

- A. You should **either** come today or tomorrow.
B. You should come **either** today or tomorrow.
C. **Neither** he is a fool nor a mad man.
D. He is **neither** a fool nor a mad man.
E. A and D are correct.

Clues: When correlative conjunctions are used, care should be taken to see that two nouns and verbs

are joined properly.

142. Neither Burtukan nor her friend's _____ been to the party.
A. have B. has C. was D. are

- **Clues:** when two subjects are joined by **either/or** and **neither/nor**, the verb must agree with the second subject.
- Her friends = plural subject

143. Either Abel or Biniam _____ class monitor.
A. are B. is C. do D. does
- **Clues:** The second subject is 'Biniam' and it is a singular noun /subject, so a singular verb must be used.

But: It is possible to use plural verb in an **Informal English**.

144. Neither your relatives nor you _____ moment should clear up. (UEE 2006) allowed to leave at the
A. is B. are C. be D. have

(see Q 141&142) Answer: D

145. Stop borrowing money _____ you'll be in trouble.
A. or B. otherwise C. else D. all
- **Clues:** we use: **Imperative + conjunction + clause** to express choice between ideas.

Example: Hurry up, or /else/otherwise you'll be late.

146. _____ I feel well on Monday, I'm going to back to work.
A. Whether.....or not C. Both.... and
B. Either.....or D. Neither...nor

- **Clues:** We can also use '**whether.....or/whether.....or not**' to introduce alternative conditionals (NOT; if.....not)

Example: **Whether or not** you come, I must go there.
You'll have to put up with it, **whether** you like it or not.

5.8 Markers of Additive

- These types of markers are also known as **cumulative** or **copulative** conjunctions.
- **Linking words** which are used to just **add** one statement to another are :

*also, too/as well, and
both....and
not only....but also
no less than
as well as
in addition
besides
furthermore
moreover*

- Words and phrases above are to mean '**and**' (= **additional**)

A. 'and'

- To join objects of two simple sentences

Example

I met Hasen. I met Engdashedet.

I met Hasen **and** Engdashedet.

I met **both** Hasen **and** Engdashedet.

She looked **and** smiled at me.

She came into the room **and** lay down on a sofa.

He fell on the road **and** hurt his knee.

- Adjective Complements can be joined in the same way.

Example

It was cold. It was wet.

It was cold **and** wet.

B. 'also'

Example

I play squash and I **also** play tennis.

She is an engineer she is **also** a mother.

Sara always works late she **also** works on Saturdays sometimes.

British English is very formal. We can **also** use American's.

C. 'too/as well'

Example

Sara always works late. She works on Saturday sometimes, **too/as well**.

Does the price include breakfast only, or dinner **as well**? I like

Betty and I like Martha, too/as well.

D. 'both....and'

- These conjunctions are used to link nouns, adjectives, verbs, phrases and clauses together.
- When they join two subjects, the verb should agree with both subjects.

(Plural verb is used)

➤ Both + adjective + and + adjective

Example

The play was both funny and shocking.

She is both pretty and clever.

This film is both boring and disgusting.

➤ Both + noun + and + noun

Example

I spoke to both the director and his secretary.

(Not: I both spoke to the director and his secretary.)

Both men and women were drafted into the army.

Both the boss and his secretary are flying to Paris.

➤ Both + verb + and + verb

Example

She both plays the piano and sings.

(Not: She both plays the piano and she sings)

They both gave me money and stood by me in trouble.

I both admire and distrust him.

- Note: We don't repeat the second subject.
- We can use verb before both if it introduces two subjects.
He repairs both cars and motorbikes.
She plays both tennis and badminton.

E. 'Not only....but also'

- When they join two subjects the verbs stands for the second subjects, if the second subject is singular, the verb is also singular and vice versa.
- This structure is used to emphasize that something else also true.

Before verbs

She not only wrote the text but also selected the illustrations.

He not only wrote the song but also sang it well.

They not only invited me to dinner but also sent a car to pick me.

Before nouns

Not only men but also women were chosen.
Not only boys but also girls must be encouraged.
Not only Tariku but also Nagaro is clever at maths.
(Not: are clever)
(=Both Tariku and Nagaro are clever at maths)
(Not: is clever)

- Note: 'Not only....but also' can be replaced by 'both.....and' and opposite to 'neither....nor'.

Compare

Not only you but also I am very angry with that rude boy.
(=both I and you are very angry with that rude boy.)

Not only computers but also laptops are expensive these days.
(=Both computers and laptops are expensive these days.)

F. 'No less than'

- She, no less than her friend, tried to cheat me.

G. As well as/along with/together with

- When two subjects are joined by these conjunctions, the verb agrees with the first subject.

Example

Nasibu, as well as her friend is handsome.

The teacher, together with the students is in the garden.

As well as writing the letter for me, he posted it.

The teachers, along with the director are at the party.

H. 'in addition /besides/furthermore/moreover'

- These all are to provide a further information on what has been said they are to mean 'and'.

Example

My uncle has a car and a motorbike. In addition, he has G + 4house

I am not inviting my cousin- I don't like him.

Besides, he didn't invite me to his party.

The buildings are in a very poor condition. Furthermore, there is no money to repair them.

The Vehicle is very fast. Besides, it has got four-wheel drive.

- Note: besides is a preposition means 'in addition to' it precedes a

noun/pronoun/gerund.

- Besides doing the cooking, I look after the garden.
- What languages do you know besides English?
(Besides = in addition to)
- Beside is a conjunction and also means 'in addition to'. It usually precedes its clause, but can follow it.
 - I can't go now; I am too busy. Besides, my passport is out of date. (see the examples above)
- Be careful with: besides and beside
 - Beside (preposition): If one thing is beside something else, they are next to each other. (beside = 'next to') (besides = in addition to')

5.9 Markers of illustration

- Other linking words and phrases are those which give an example about something or to illustrate the point that have been made/said.
- These are:

For example	Such as
For instance	like

A. For example and for instance

Example

I know that he is rude. For example /For instance, he shouts at waiters or.

I know that he is rude. He shouts at waiters, for example/for instance.

It is possible to combine computer science with other subjects for example/for instance physics.

There is a similar word in many languages, for example/for instance in French and Italian.

- Note: Both for example and instance introduces a clause.

B. 'Like and such as'

Example

I like eating sweet things like cakes and honey.

I usually wear light colours like white, pink or yellow.

Some parts of the country, like the south-west, receive a lot of rain. (like= for example)

A game of chance such as roulette.

Wild flowers such as mosquitoes, tsetse flies and lice carry microbes

- Note: like and such as always introduces a phrase.

Illustrative Examples

147. Leave _____ functioning. The printer and the copier out there. They are not.

A. all B. both C. either D. neither

- Clues: 'and' is always used with 'both' (both....and) to introduce/join two subjects to show inclusiveness.
- Both ...and can be replaced by not only ...but also.
- Leave not only the printer but also the copier out there.

Answer: B

148. Yonas was late. So was Feben.

• We join these sentence as:

A. Both Yonas and Feben were late.

B. Not only Yonas but also Feben was late.

C. Either Yonas or Feben was late.

D. A and B are correct.

• (see Q 146) Answer: D

149. _____ chemistry, I also have to study biology and physics.

A. Besides

C. For example

B. Beside

D. Not only

- Clues: besides= in addition to; beside= next to.

Answer: A

150. Came and sit down _____ me.

A. beside

B. besides

C. near

D. all

Answer: A

151. You can't buy the book. read in the library.

A. Both....and

C. Either...or

B. Whether...or

D. Neither nor you have to borrow it

- Clues: To express a choice between two possibilities we can use either...or. (= one of the two)

• (See the notes) Answer: C

152. Lots of our friends have DVD recorders, don't they? Sara has got one, _____

A. furthermore

C. as well

B. also

D. for example

- **Clues:** To give an illustration, we use **for example** for instance. They can be used between sentences or at the end.

153. Hassen _____ his friends wants to join the party to night.
 A. as well as C. such as
 B. along with D. A and B

- **Clues:** We use **as well as /along with/ together with** to include subjects, and the verb agrees with the first subject.

Example:

My father **as well as/ along with /together with** my brothers has come (Not: have come)

154. Imports goods _____ videos and cars are quite expensive

- A. in other words C. Such as
 B. for example D. otherwise

- **Clues:** **for example /instance** are used to introduce clause and **such as** and **like** are used to introduce phrase. All are to give an illustration, in this case.

155. You can take a lot of measures to quality and improve your proficiency in English. _____, you can read fiction and make

use of the language in your everyday conversation .(UEE)

- A. For example C. By the way
 B. What is more D. By and large

- **Note:** 'By the way' is used to change the subject.

Example: It's a lovely day, isn't it? Yes, beautiful. **By the way**, have you seen Natnael?

156. I don't like her I don't dislike her.

☞ The same as:

- A. I neither like nor dislike her.
 B. I neither like or dislike her.
 C. I don't neither like or dislike her.
 D. all are correct.

- **Clues:** we don't use negative expressions with **neither... nor**.

Example: He is not rational. He is not polite.
 He is not **neither** rational **nor** impolite. (wrong)
 He is **neither** irrational **nor** impolite. (wrong)

He is **neither** rational **nor** polite. (right)

He is not **either** rational **or** polite. (right)

He is not rational **nor** polite.

☞ (See the notes) Answer: A

157. The letter has been lost, to the wrong address. _____
 _____ the postman has delivered it

- A. or B. otherwise C. else D. all

158. I can leave now. I can stay for another hour.

☞ Is the same as:

- A. I can neither leave now nor stay for another hour.
 B. I can either leave now or stay for another hour.
 C. I can leave now not stay for another hour.
 D. I not only leave now but also stay for another hour.

- **Clues:** The speaker has two alternatives, leaving or staying.

Answer: D

159. My markers have been improving steadily. _____ good result in these year.

Answer: B

I've had a

- A. Besides C. Moreover
 B. Furthermore D. all

- **Clues:** To add information to what has been explained, we can use all the above connectors in the same way.

☞ (see the notes) Answer: D

☞ **Fill in the blanks with suitable conjunctions.**

160. You can pay me _____ in Ethiopian dollars in American dollars.

161. _____ did the prisoners escape they set the prison on fire.

162. Leave me alone; _____ I'll call police.

163. Soft drinks _____ 7up and mirinda are my.

164. The president _____ his ministers leaves for china next week.

165. Would you like to have beer or wine? I don't mind. _____

166. _____ the Prime Minister _____ the secretary are flying to America.

167. Tadesse _____ built his own house _____ he designed it himself.

168.

• First he received his B.A. and then he went to graduate school....

Answer: B

A. SO

C. consequently

B. that

D. in order to

- **that-clause (that/in order that/so that + clause)**

- **to-infinitive (to/inorder to/so as to + infinitive – v1)**

(see Q 39, 40) Answer: B

A. Since

C. As a result

B. However

D. Because of

since/because/as + clause (sub + v)

Because of

Due to

Owing to

As a result of

On account of

+ noun phrase / gerund

(see Q68,69,...) Answer: A

Suggested Answers

160. Either /or

161. Not only/but also

162. Otherwise/or

163. Such as like

164. As well as

165. Either

166. Both/and

167. not only/but/also

6. RELATIVE CLAUSE

6.1 Introduction

A Clause is a part of a sentence.

A **relative clause** tells us which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) we talk about.

It's one way of joining or relating different sentences together.

Example

A nurse is someone **who** looks after patients.

The ball which I bought yesterday lost.

We need a machine **that** work.

The girl whom I admire a lot is Sosina.

A window is a woman **whose** husband is dead.

He went to Eritrea **where** his uncle lives.

Did you see the words that link each relative clause to the main clause. These are who, which, that, whom, whose and where. We call them as **relative pronouns**. All they tell us about words come before them (underlined words nouns)

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| { | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ <i>who = refers to someone (person)</i> ➤ <i>which = refers to the ball (thing)</i> ➤ <i>what = refers to a machine (thing)</i> ➤ <i>whom =refer to the girl (person)</i> ➤ <i>whose = refers to a woman (possession)</i> ➤ <i>where = refers to a Eritrea (place)</i> | } |
|---|---|---|

➤ Types of Relative Clauses

There are two kinds of relative clauses: (**Defining and non- defining**)

6.2 Defining/identifying Relative clause

What is defining relative clause?

It's the relative clause used to **define/ identify**, or make clear what the sentences is about.

Example

The girl won the prize.

She is my niece.

→ The girl who won the prize is my niece.

He reads a magazines.

A magazines have high literary quality.

→ He reads a magazines which have high quality.

Note: In the examples above, the second sentences tells us more about the first so we can join the two with a relative clause, introduced by a relative pronoun who and which as:
 "...who won the prize" tell us which girl.
 "...which have high quality" tell us which magazines.

The use of Defining relative clause

A. to give definitions

(Who, Which, That)

= These are subject pronouns

Important! 'who' refers mainly to people.

- An architect is someone who designs building.
- An surgeon is someone who performs operations.
- An burglar is a person who breaks into a house to steal things.
- A pessimist is someone who expects the worst to happen.
- A coward is someone who is not brave.

Note1: The second relative clause (and also called adjective clause) tell us all about the first underlined nouns (= they define what they are), and who in all sentences is used as a subject replacing or defining (an architect, a surgeon, a burglar, a pessimist and a coward)

Important! 'which' refers to animals or things.

- An x-ray machine is a piece of equipment which uses radiation to photograph the insides of someone's body.
- A saw is a tool which uses people to cut something (tree).
- A toy is something which a child plays with.
- A vase is something which you put flower in.
- A thermometer is a device which helps a doctor measure a body temperature.

Note2: The underlined clauses in a second sentences define the underlined nouns in the first pattern. (tell what those things are)
 'That' may refers to either people, animals, or things.

- A tenant is someone who/that pays rent to live in a house or flat.
- An atheist is someone who/that doesn't believe in god.
- A truck is a kind of vehicle which/that carries coal, grain, oil, etc.
- A lion is an animal which/that lives in jungle.
- A scissors is a tool which/that serves to cut hair.
- A dictionary is a book which/that gives you the meaning of words.

B. Other uses of Defining Relative clause

I thanked the woman.

She helped me.

→ I thanked the woman who/that helped me.

(who/that = is used instead of she = the woman)

The book is mine.

It is on the table.

→ The book which/that is on the table is mine.

(which/that = is used instead of it = the book)

The students are from China.

They sit in the front now.

→ The students who/that are from china sit in the front now.

(who/that = used instead of they = the students)

Do you like a news paper?

It has good funnies.

→ Do you like a new paper which/that has good funnies?

(which/that = used instead of it = a new paper)

Important! In everyday usage, often one pattern is used more commonly than another.

- As a subject pronoun, who is more common than that.
- As a subject pronoun, that is more common than which.
- When they are used as a subject of relative clause (who, which, that can't be omitted).
- The teacher who teaches English is my uncle (correct)

- The teacher teaches English is my uncle (wrong)
- We can replace **which** or **who** with **that** in a defining relative clause (see in the examples above).
- commas are not used in defining relative clause because it describes or a particular noun (subject).

C. Omitting "Who, Which or that"

The defining relative clause can be used with and without **who/which/that**. We can omit the relative pronouns (**who/which/that**) where they are used as an object, not subject.

Examples

- The book was good. }
I read it. }
- The book which/that I read was good.
→ The book I read was good. (which/that is omitted)
Because 'the book' is object
- I like the dress. }
You were wearing yesterday. }
- I like the dress which/that you were wearing yesterday.
→ I like the dress you were wearing yesterday.
(which/that is omitted)
Because 'the dress' is object.

Note: **Who** is usually used instead of **whom** especially in spoken English.

Whom is generally used only in very formal English.

Compare:

- The man was Mr. Alemu. }
I saw him. }
- The man **whom** I saw was Mr. Alemu.
→ The man **who** I saw was Mr. Alemu.
→ The man **that** I saw was Mr. Alemu.
→ The man I saw was Mr. Alemu.
(**who / whom / that** = omitted)

Because 'the man' is object.

Note: This omission is only possible in defining relative clause where these relative pronouns are used as object.

- The girl who won the race was happy.
The girl won the race was happy.

- (omission is never allowed here) because the clause "who won the race" tells us which girl we are talking about - it defines or identifies the noun girl.

D. Reduced Relative Clause

In defining relative clause, we sometimes leave out **who/which/that** + **is/are/was/were** before participles (-ing and -ed forms).

Example

- All the rubbish that is floating in the sea is really danger to health.
(= All the rubbish floating is floating in the really danger to health)
The nurse who is looking after my mother is very kind to her.
(= The nurse looking after my mother is very kind to her.)
The man who were outside are gardner.
(= The men outside are gardner.)
The book which was presented to me as a prize is very useful.
(= The book presented to me as a prize is very useful.)
They sold the picture that was painted by that artist.
(= They sold the picture painted by that artist)

Note: Reducing some parts of words in the above defining relative clauses brings no change in the meaning of each sentence.

E. Preposition in defining relative clause

- Relative pronoun used as the object of a preposition.
- In relative clauses (after **who, whom, which, that**), verb + preposition combinations usually stay together.
- This means that prepositions can be separated from their relative pronoun objects.

	Object		Verb+ preposition
A pen is	(that)	you can	write with
Something			
She is the girl	(whom)	I was	talking about
It was the music	(which)	we	listened to

- Prepositions can also go before their objects, but this is usually very formal.

- A pen is something with which you can write.

- She is the girl **about whom** I was talking.

Other possible examples

{ She is the woman
I told you **about her** }

She is the woman **about whom** I told you.

She is the woman **whom (m)** I told you **about**.

She is the woman **that** I told you **about**.

She is the woman I told you **about**.

Note1- In very formal English, the preposition comes at the beginning of Relative clause. Usually however, in everyday usage, the preposition comes after the subject and verb of the relative clause.

{ The music was good.
We listened to it last night. }

The music **to which** we listened last night was good.

The music **which** we listened **to** last night was good.

The music **that** we listened **to** last night was good.

The we listened **to** last night was good.

(pronoun omitted/left out)

Note2- If the preposition comes at the beginning of the relative clause, only **whom** or **which** may be used

A preposition is never immediately followed by **that** or **who**

6.3 Non-defining relative clause

Some relative clauses identify-they say who or what we are talking about (defining relative clause). Others don't identify, because it is already clear who or what we are talking about, so the relative clause which **add extra information** and is **not essential** in identifying what or who is being talked about is called **non-defining relative clause**. (It's also called an extra or adding information clause).

- Commas are mandatory to separate the non-defining clause from the rest of the sentences
- The commas have a similar function to bracket here.
- In non-defining relative clauses, you cannot use 'that' instead of **who**, **whom** or **which**.
- You cannot leave out relative pronoun, even when it is the object of the verb in the relative clause because they are purposely used for extra information.

Compare Defining and non-defining

The woman **who/that** does my hair is must pregnant.

(= Defining: it defines which woman is pregnant)

Meseret, **who** does my hair, is just pregnant.

(=non-defining: "who does my hair" is an extra information)

My brother **who/that** live in Addis Ababa is a doctor.

(=Defining: It identifies which of my brother is a doctor)

My brother Yonas, **who** lives in Addis Ababa, is doctor.

(= Non-defining: "who lives in Addis Ababa" is not essential)

The planet **which** has many moons is very large.

(= Defining: It exactly defines which planet is very large)

→ The one which has many moons.

The Jupiter, **which** has twelve moons, is the lagers planet

(= Non-defining: "which has 12 moons" is obvious, and unnecessary to explain, so it's an extra information for Jupiter)

Note1- "That" is never allowed in non-defining relative clause.

Note2- Omission is impossible in non-defining relative clause.

The woman **whom/who/that** I met yesterday is here now.

The woman I met yesterday is here now

(**who(m)** and **that** are omitted since the woman is an object in defining relative)

Dr. Derartu, **whom** I met yesterday, is here now.

Dr. Derartu, I met yesterday, is here now

(omitting **whom** is not allowed here)

I met Dr. Derartu, **who** teaches at this university

(= the second sentence is an extra information)

6.3.1 Prepositions in non- defining relative clause (Preposition + **whom/which**)

You can use preposition before **whom** (for people) and **which** (for things). You can say: **to whom/with whom/ about which/without which**, etc.

- My friend Tesfaye, **with whom** I often go out, is a polite person.

- Yesterday we visited Addis Ababa Museum, to which we'd never been before.

Note: In informal English we often keep the preposition after the verb in the relative clause. When we do this, we normally use who (not whom) for people.

- This is my friend from Asela, who I was telling about.
➤ Yesterday we visited Addis Ababa Museum, which we'd never been to before.

6.3.2 Whose, Where and When in both relative clauses

- **Whose:** Whose is mainly used to show belongingness (that something belongs to someone) in both clauses.
 - It is used instead of (its, her, his, their)
 - We don't use both together.
- I apologized to the woman. }
I spilled her coffee. }
- I apologized to the woman whose coffee I spilled (defining)
The man called the police. }
His wallet was stolen. }
- The man whose wallet was stolen called the police (defining)
Professor Fikire is excellent. }
I'm talking his course. }
- Professor Fikire, whose course I'm talking, is excellent (non-defining)
Abraham and his friend were in a very bad mood.
Their cars broke down.
→ Abraham and friend, whose cars broke down, were in a very bad mood (Non-defining)
- **Where:** refers to place. Modifies a place (city, country, room, house, school, town, etc.)

The building is very good. }
She lives there. }

- The building where he lives is very good.
The building in which he lives is very good.
The building which he lives in is very good.
The building that he lives is very good.

Defining
relative
clause

The building he lives in is very good.

(the pronoun is omitted as the building is object)

Note1- If where is used, a preposition is not included in the relative clause. If where is not used, the preposition must be included.

- She has just been to Gonder, where her friend lives.
(Non-defining)

- Addis Ababa, where my brother lives, is the capital city.
(Non-defining)

- **When:** is used in relative clause to modify a noun of time (year, day, time, century, etc.)

I will never forget the day
I meet you then (= on that day)

→ I'll never forget the day when I met you.

I'll never forget the day on which I met you.

I'll never forget the day that I met you.

I'll never forget the day I met you.

(= when is omitted as the day is the object)

Defining
Relative
clause

Note2- To use of a preposition in a relative clause which modifies a noun of time is somewhat different from that in other relative clause. A preposition is used preceding **which**. Otherwise, it is omitted.

- September 1st, when I was born, is unforgettable day in my life. (Non-defining)

6.3.3 Relative clause with and without commas

Compare:

We have two sisters who work in this company.

→ Without commas, this sentence means that we probably have more than two sisters but only two of them work in that company. It's defining/identifying the two sisters of ours.

With comma

We have two sisters, who work in that company.

→ With commas, this sentence means that we have **only two** sisters, both work in the company. It's adding an extra information about them.

6.4 Summary of Relative Clause

Relative pronouns in Defining Relative Clauses

	subject	object	possessive	place	time
For people	who that	who whom that	whose	where in which in that	when on which
For things	which that	which that	whose of which		

Relative pronouns in Non-defining Relative clause

	subject	object	possessive	place	time
For people	who	who whom	whose	where in which	when on which
For things	which	which	whose of which		

Illustrative Examples

Questions of Models and University Entrance Examination

1. She is wearing the dress.
It is new.

→ The combination of these sentences will be:

- A. The dress **that** she is wearing is new.
B. The dress **which** she is wearing is new.
C. The dress she is wearing is new.
D. All are correct.

Clue: In defining relative clause, where the relative pronoun is used as an **object**, (the dress) you can use with or without these pronouns (that/which)

Answer: D

2. Which of the following relative clause isn't correctly expressed?

- A. Abebe Bikila **who** ran, a barefoot was a hero athlete.
B. This morning. I met Sara, **whom** I hadn't seen for ages.
C. An architect is someone **that** designs buildings.
D. Did you hear about the earthquake **which** occurred in California?

Clue: You have to use comma (commas) in non-defining relative clause to separate the extra information from the rest of the sentence. (see choice 'B')

→ Abebe Bikila, who ran barefoot, was a hero athlete.

non-defining

Answer: A

3. The city was beautiful.
We spent our vacation there.

→ When we combine them:

- A. The city **which** we spent our vacation was beautiful.
B. The city **where** we spent our vacation was beautiful.
C. The city **whose** we spent our vacation was beautiful.
D. The city **when** we spent our vacation was beautiful.

Clue: Use '**where**' in relative clause to modify a place (city, won, country, room, house, etc.) You can also use (in which) (see 6.3.2)

Answer: B

4. I've bought a suitcase _____ is made from a very light material.

- A. whose B. who C. which D. whom

Clue: A suitcase is a subject noun (thing), so use **which**.

Answer: C

5. May is the month.

The weather is usually the hottest then.

→ These two sentences can be joined by:

- A. when B. where C. who D. which

Clue: There relative pronoun used to modify a time (year, day, time, month, century, etc.) in a relative clause is **when** (on which/on that day).

→ May is the month **when (on which)** the weather is usually the hottest. [when is used instead of then] which modifies the month May.

Answer: A

6. The boy **who is talking to me** is from China.

→ The reduced clause of the above relative clause is:

- A. The boy who talking to me is from China.
- B. The boy is talking to me is from China.
- C. The boy talking to me is from China.
- D. The boy is from China.

Clue: It's possible to change a relative clause to a relative phrase by removing some parts of it. This is only possible in defining/ restrictive relative clause.

Example

(who/which/that + is, are, was) can be reduced.

"The book **that are** on the shelf are mine" can be reduced as:
The book on the shelf are mine. The meaning is remain unchanged.
(see D) Answer: C

7. I met the man.

His sister is your friend.

→ The correct combination of the two will be:

- A. I met the man who is your friend.
- B. I met the man whose sister is your friend.
- C. I met the man whom sister is your friend.
- D. I met the man which sister is your friend.

Clue: The relative pronoun used to modify a possession is his, their in relative clause is **whose**, particularly for people.
Answer: B

8. A cemetery is a place _____ people are buried.

- A. when B. where C. who D. which

(see Q 3) Answer: B

9. I met somebody _____ mother writes detective story.

- A. whose B. whom C. which D. what

Answer: A

10. The tree _____ they had their picnic was the largest and oldest in the park.

- A. under which B. in which C. to which D. under where

Clue: In formal or written English, the preposition is often placed before the relative pronoun, and in this case the pronoun cannot be omitted. (preposition + pronoun)

Note: Tree is a thing, so under which means they had their picnic under the tree.
Answer: A

11. The person _____ he is negotiating is the chairman of a large company.

- A. with who C. with whom
- B. with that D. with whose

Clue: Don't forget that the relative pronouns (who, whom, which and that) are used as the object of preposition (in, with, for, about, etc.) when the relative pronouns whom and which are used, they should be preceded by preposition

Example

(with which, with whom, about which/ whom etc.)

She's my friend **to whom** I always write.

Economics is a subject **about which** I know very little.

→ (see the note for details)

Answer: C

12. We bought the book **that** was written in university. Which parts of this statement can be reduced?

- A. the book C. was written
- B. that was D. in university

Clue: We can reduce some parts of the relative clause remaining the meaning unchanged.

That is (who/which/that + is, are was, were)

As: We bought the book written in a university
(that was = reduced)

Answer: B

13. He said nothing _____ made sense.

- A. who B. which C. that D. what

Clue: We normally use that(not which) after: **all, nothing, everything, the only.**

> I have told her everything that I know.

> Is there anything that I can do to help? Answer: C

14. Robera is one of the kindest people _____ I've ever known.

- A. which B. who C. that D. whom

Clue: We also use that (not who/whom) after superlative expression. The kindest people is about superlative case.

Answer: C

15. Weizero Ayelech has two daughters who lives in Cairo.

→ Which of the following is true about weizero Ayelech?

- A. Weizero Ayelech may probably has more than two daughters.
- B. Weizero Ayelech has only two daughters.

Clue: As mentioned in the notes, commas aren't used in defining relative clause. Defining relative clause is only necessary if there is more than one person or thing involved. Then, the above sentence means maybe from many daughters of hers, two of them live in Cairo. (Weizero Ayelech has more than two daughters)

16. Weizero Ayelech has two daughters, who live in Cairo.
→ Which of the following is true about this sentence?

A. She has only two daughters.
B. She has more than two daughters.

Clue: Comma is necessary in non-defining relative clause to make an extra information about the noun. In this sentence, Weizero Ayelech has only two daughters and they live in Cairo.

17. They asked me a lot of questions _____ I couldn't answer.
A. none of which C. that of which
B. most of that D. most of which

Clue: Use All of/ most of/none of/many of/ each of, any of, etc.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer

- _____ does that car belong to?
A. Who B. Whom C. That D. Which
- Excuse me but shouldn't you say _____ does that car belong to?
A. to which C. to whom
B. to that D. to whose
- That is another way of saying it. I'm talking about the car _____ parked over there.
A. whom B. that C. who D. what
- _____ do you think would have a car like that?
A. What B. That C. Who D. whom
- Well, I should say someone for _____ money is no object.
A. whom B. who C. that D. which
- The car _____ you are referring happens to be mine.
A. to that B. to which C. to whom D. to what
- That's interesting. We are talking about the car _____ has a red roof.
A. that B. who C. whom D. whose

- Yes, it's the best car _____ I've ever had. Why do you ask?
A. that B. which C. whose D. who
- Well, I think you ought to speak to that man _____ is standing with notebook in front of the car.
A. which B. whom C. who D. whose
- Oh no! It's traffic warden putting a parking ticket on my car and I haven't any money to pay the fine. _____ I'll have to pay.
A. whom B. what C. who D. which
- I don't understand a word _____ you are talking _____.
A. that/about C. who/about
B. what/about D. which/to
- I'm looking at the photograph _____ you sent me with your letter.
A. who B. which C. whose D. whom
- There is a new television programme called "_____ wants to be a millionaire?"
A. That B. Whose C. What D. Who
- I think you will see that this is the best museum _____ you can find in the town.
A. that B. which C. who D. what
- Did you meet that lady _____ uncle works in the library?
A. that B. whom C. of which D. whose
- The grass, _____ I cut every week, seems to grow very quickly.
A. whose B. who C. which D. that
- He gave several reasons, only a few of _____ were valid.
A. whom B. who C. that D. which
- He introduced me to his roommates, both of _____ are from Arba Minch.
A. whom B. who C. that D. which
- My brother, _____ grades are excellent, has been sent for scholarship.
A. which B. that's C. whose D. whom
- The building _____ he lives is very old.
A. where B. in which C. there D. A and B
- I'll never forget the day _____ I met her.
A. when B. when C. on which D. A and C
- Which sentence is correct?
A. The books that are on the shelf are mine.
B. The books no the shelf are mine.
C. Both are correct.

Answer keys

1. A
2. C
3. B
4. D
5. A
6. B
7. A
8. A
9. C
10. D
11. A
12. B

13. D
14. A
15. D
16. C
17. D
18. A
19. C
20. D
21. D
22. C

telegram:-@samuelfromethiopia

7. MODAL AUXILIARIES

General information

Modal auxiliaries are also sometimes called modal verbs or modals.

- ♦ Modal verbs are: can, could; may, might; shall, should; must; ought to.
- ♦ Have to, be able to, used to, had better, be supposed to and needn't are similar to modals in some ways, and they are included in this section.

7.1. Modals Expressing 'Ability' (can, could, be able to)

- ♦ These modals are used to introduce ability or power (their negative forms are: can't, couldn't to express inability)

A. Can/be able to

- ♦ We use both 'can' and 'be able to' to express present ability (that somebody has the ability to do something)
- ♦ Can is more preferable/usual than be able to, but the same.
- ♦ Be in present = is, am, are.
- ♦ With can and be able to, we describe natural or learned ability.

Examples

I can/am able to run 1500 meters in 5 minutes (natural ability).

I can't/am not able to drive (learned ability).

(I am not able to = I am unable to)

Kasech is so unfit she can't/is not able to/unable to run at all.

I can/am able to speak Italian (learned ability)

(I've known and I can speak it when I want/at any time)

Points to note

- ♦ Future: We can use can if we are deciding now what to do in the future. In other cases we use 'will be able to' to express

that something will be possible in the future.

Examples

I **can** see you tomorrow morning for half an hour.

One day we **will be able to** live without wars.

(NOT: one day we **can** live....)

I think I **will be able to** speak English quite well in a few months.

I **will be able to** pass my driving test after I've had a few lessons
(NOT: I **can**/I **will can**)

- ♦ **Can, not be able to**, is used with verbs of perception.
- ♦ Verbs of perception are verbs like see, hear, smell, etc.
- ♦ We often use **can + verb** in place of the simple present with verbs of perception.

Examples

I **can** see a bird in that tree (= I see)

Can you see it? (= Do you see?)

I **can't** hear the music on the TV. (= I don't hear)

I **can't** smell anything good. (= I don't smell)

Thus: **Will be able to** = expresses future ability only.

Can = expresses both future and present ability.

Be able to = introduces simple, present ability only.

B. Could

was / were able to

managed to

Could

- ♦ Its negative form is **could not (couldn't)**
- ♦ We use '**could/couldn't, was/were able to, wasn't/ weren't able to**' to describe general ability in the past.
(was not/were not able to = was/were unable to)

Examples

She **could** read when she was four. (general ability)

I **could/was able to** run very fast when I was a boy.

My grandfather **could/was able to** speak five languages.

Jemberu was an excellent tennis player. He **could** beat anybody.

(= He had the general ability to beat anybody)

- ♦ **Note - 1:** We use **could** with verbs of perception, not **was/were able to**.

These verbs are (see, hear, smell, taste, feel, remember.)

Example

When we went into the house, we **could** smell burning.

She spoke a very low voice, but **could** understand what she said.

I looked up, but I **couldn't** see anything (= I didn't see)

- Note - 2:** Like '**can**', **could** is more preferable/ usual than **was/were able to** for past ability.

- Note - 3:** The negative **couldn't** is possible in all situations.

Examples: My elder brother **couldn't** dance.

Sani played well, but he **couldn't** beat Ermias.

We tried hard, but we **couldn't** persuade them to come with us.

B. Managed or succeed in ... ing (was/were able to)

- ♦ These expressions are used to express a particular/a specific/ one occasion (ability in the past) (NOT: **could**)
- ♦ Are to describe the successful completion of a specific action.
- ♦ The negative form of **managed to/succeed in** is **didn't manage/succeed in....**

Examples

We **were able to/managed to** get tickets for the match yesterday.

I **managed to** get up early today

(NOT: I **could** get up....)

After six hours, we **succeeded in** getting to the top of the mountain.

(...We **managed to** get to the top of the mountain.)

(NOT: We **could** get....)

- ♦ However, we can use **couldn't** to describe a specific action not successfully completed.

Examples

We **couldn't** get tickets for the match yesterday Or:

We weren't able to/didn't manage to get tickets for the match yesterday.

Thus: could = for general past ability
managed to = for a specific action

Extreme points

• We use 'can/could' in place of 'is often' and 'was often'.
 Instead of: It is often cold in January.

We can say: It can be cold in January.

Instead of: He is often naughty when he was a boy.

We can say: He could be naughty when he was a boy.

We can also use could to say that somebody has a general permission to do something.

Example: We were completely free. We could do what we want.

(= we were allowed to do) -- permission.

Illustrative Examples

1. Human being _____ run fast for long distances on two legs.

A. could D. are able to
 B. were able to E. C and D
 C. can

Clues:

We use 'can' and 'be able to' to express ability in present.

Both are mostly interchangeable.

Answer: E

2. The sea is often rough in the harbor.

• The underlined phrase is replaced by:

A. can be B. could be C. will be D. may be

Clues: We use is often and was often instead of can and could.

Answer: A

3. Our teacher says we _____ speak English fluently in a few months.

A. could C. will be able to
 B. are able to D. managed to

Clues: We use will be able to, not can to say that something will be possible in the future.

Answer: C

4. I think I _____ play table tennis better after a bit of practice. (UEE)

- A. managed to C. could
 B. can D. will be able to

(see the explanation above)

Answer: D

You _____ go home table tennis better after a bit of practice. (UEE)

- A. can C. could
 B. will be able to D. may

Clues: When we make a decision now about something in the future, we use can, not will be able to.

Answer: A

- Look, I _____ swim.
 A. will be able to C. could
 B. am able to D. can

Clues: We don't use be able to:

When we talk about something that is happening as we are speaking, (at the moment of speaking)

Answer: D

This furniture _____ assembled by anyone, with just a screwdriver.

- A. can be C. will be able to
 B. is able to be D. could be

Clues: We don't also use 'be able to' before be + V₁, (or is /am/are + able to be + past participle)

Example: This load can be carried easily (Not: is able to be carried)

Answer: A

1. Helen _____ read well, even though she's only three.

A. can B. is able to C. could D. a and B

Clues: We use both 'can' and 'be able to' to talk about an ability (present) that someone has.

(see the notes) Answer: D

2. He _____ speak Spanish.

A. can B. could C. must D. will

• It is about a general ability in present.

Answer: A

3. Hagos _____ pay the violin quite well when he was 10. (UEE)

A. Can B. could C. be able to D. might

Note: 'able' should be preceded by be (is/ am/ was/were) and followed by 'to'.

Answer: B

11. He has now recovered from his injury and (UEE 2000)
 A. was able to C. is able to
 B. could D. may be
 It is about a specific ability in present. Answer: C
12. Teshale _____ leave hospital only six hours after the baby was born. (UEE)
 A. was able to C. will be able to
 B. could D. is able to
 Clues: This is about a specific action (ability) in the past. Answer: A
13. At what age _____ you get driving license?
 A. can B. may C. be able to D. all
 Answer: A
14. Which sentence is wrong?
 A. A female corcodile can lay 30-40 eggs.
 B. she can able to speak Greek very well.
 C. I could play the piano quite well when I was younger.
 D. She is able to see distance things.
 Clues: We are not allowed to use can/ could with be able to. Answer: B

15. I _____ play the guitar since I was about six years old.
 A. could C. have been able to
 B. was able to D. can
 Answer: B

Clues: When we express ability in present perfect, we use **has/have + been able to, not can or could**

Example: I have been able to run a marathon for about two years.
 (NOT: can/ could or can be able to/could be able to)
 Answer: C

16. Human beings _____ run for long distances on two legs.
 A. are able to C. could
 B. can D. A and B
 Answer: D

17. I _____ type without looking at looking at the keyboard since I did a typing course.
 A. have been able to C. could
 B. am able to D. can
 Answer: A

Note: If a sentence is introduced by adverbs of time for and since + past tense, it is about a present perfect.

18. I _____ finish my homework before tomorrow morning.
 A. can't C. couldn't

21. _____ will not able to
 Clue: To express ability in the future, we use will/won't be able to. Answer: B
22. At her third try, she _____ pass the driving test.
 A. can B. managed to C. is able to D. could
 Clues: To express one occasion /a specific action, we use managed to or succeeded in (past ability)
 Answer: B
23. Why did you walk all the way from station? You _____ for a lift.
 A. could phone C. have been able to phoned
 B. could have phoned D. can have phoned
 Answer: B
24. Why did I listen to you? I _____ at home here in the cold, by now instead of sitting.
 A. could have been C. was able to
 B. will have been able to D. can
 (see the explanations above) Answer: A

Fill up the possible modals of ability

1. See _____ walk again in a few weeks.
 2. Do you think one day people _____ travel to the stars?
 3. I will post your letter, but the postman _____ read the address.
 4. I _____ give you the lesson now, but I _____ manage this evening if you like.
 5. Fortunately, I _____ get her address from her office.
 6. I don't know how the cat _____ get through the window, but it did.
 7. I think I had the wrong key, because I _____ open the door.
 8. After the accident, she somehow _____ walk home.
 9. What _____ you see from the window?
 10. When my brother was a child he _____ turn upside-down and walk.
 11. There was a fire last night in our block, but everyone _____ escape from the building.
 12. Early hominids _____ run long distances on two legs.

34. It was wonderful! I _____ the way.

Unit - 7: Modal Auxiliaries

hear people cheering the

Answer Key

- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| 22. will be able to | 26. managed to | 30. can |
| 23. will be able to | 27. managed to | 31. could |
| 24. won't be able to | 28. couldn't | 32. was able to |
| 25. can't... can | 29. managed to | 33. must have been able to |
| | | 34. could / was able to |

7.2. Modals Expressing 'permission'

(can/ could; may/ might; be allowed to)

- A. Asking for permission with can, could; may, might
- We use **can, could, may** and **might** to ask for permission depending on situation.

- Can is the commonst and most informal:
Can I borrow your umbrella (please)?
- Can is more polite than **could**:
Could I borrow your umbrella (Please)?
- May is more respectful than **can** and **could**:
- Might is the most polite but the least common:
Might I borrow your umbrella (please)?
- We can add **possibly** and use expressions like do you think I wonder if to make requests even more polite:
Can/could/may/might I possibly borrow your umbrella?
Do you think I could/ Do you think I might (possibly) borrow your umbrella?
I wonder if I could / I wonder if I might (possibly) borrow your umbrella.

B. Giving and refusing permission /Expressing prohibition

- We personally give or refuse permission in every situations in the following ways: (can't, may not, couldn't)

Example

You { can (can't) } watch TV for as long as you like.
 { may (maynot) }

(NOT: could or might)

- We prefer to 'some other authority' that gives/refuses permission like this:

You **can/can't** or you **are allowed to/ not allowed to** smoke.

You **can/can't** or you **are permitted /not permitted to** smoke here.

You **must not** or **are forbidden to** smoke here.

- C. Permission /Prohibition in tenses other than present and future.

- May and **must** are not 'complete verbs', so we use 'be allowed to' to make up their 'missing parts'.
The children **were allowed to** watch TV last night. (Not: **Could**)

C. '**can**' (= ability) and '**can/could**'
(= have permission, be free to)

- We use **can/could** in the senses of 'am/ is /are free to' to refer to the future.

- But we must use **will be able to** (Not: '**can /could**') to describe future ability:

Mr. Tadesse **can/could** see you tomorrow, if you're free. Or
Mr. Tadesse **is able to** see you.....

- But we must use **will be able to** (NOT: '**can /could**') to describe future ability:

Baby **will be able to** stand up in two weeks' time.

(NOT: '**can/could**')
(see ability)

Illustrative Examples

35. Which of these modals verb form's is/are used **correctly**?
- Could I have another cup of tea, please?
 - May I have another cup of tea, please?
 - Might I have another cup another Cup of tea, please?
 - I wonder if I might have another cup of tea, please?
 - All are correct.

Clues: All are possible to ask for permission, but '**C**' and '**D**' are very formal.

36. Abebe: Can I ask you something?
Kebede: _____

Answer: E

- A. Yes, of course you can.
 B. Yes, of course you could.
 C. Yes, of course you can't.
 D. No, of course you can.

Clues: We prefer **can/ can't** rather than **could /couldn't** to give or refuse permission.

Examples: I am sorry, you **can't** borrow the book tonight.
 (rather than... no, you **couldn't**...)

You **can** stay in the spare room. (giving permission)
 No, you **can't** have another chocolate. (refusing permission)

37. _____ we stay just a little by longer, please?

- A. Can't B. Couldn't C. Won't D. A and B

Clues: We use **could** to be particularly polite. If we want to put extra pressure on someone to give a positive answer we can use **can't/couldn't**. For example, you might use **couldn't** where you expect that the answer is likely to be 'no', or where permission has been refused before.

38. _____ I have these postcards, please?

- A. can B. may C. could D. all

Clues: **can, may** and **could** are all used to ask for permission but different in degree.

- **Might** is extremely polite and unusual to give and refuse permission.

39. Tefera: _____ I park her, please?

Guard: No, you can't, sir.

- A. Can B. May C. Could D. all

(see Q 37 above) Answer: D

Note: We don't use **couldn't** and **mightn't** to refuse permission, but we can use them to ask for permission.

40. You _____ watch TV for as long as you like.

- A. mayn't D. couldn't
 B. can't E. A&B
 C. mightn't

(see the above) Answer: D

41. You _____ Park in front of the hospital.

- A. mightn't C. can't
 B. couldn't D. mayn't E. C&D

(see the above) Answer: E

- Bontu: Might I borrow some money?

Chaltu: _____

- A. Yes, you might
 B. Yes, you may

- C. Yes, you can
 D. B and C

Clues: We don't use **might** either to give or refuse permission instead, we use **can/ can't, may/mayn't**.

Compare

X: might I come in please?	Yes, you may - right	Yes, you can - right
Y: Yes, you might	No, you mayn't - wrong	No, you can't - right
So, you mightn't		

Answer: D

42. Could I ask you something? Yes, of course you _____.

- A. can B. may C. could D. A and B

Note: We don't use **could/couldn't** to give /refuse permission like that of **might/mightn't**.

Answer: D

43. You are not allowed to smoke here.

The other way to express this is:

- A. You must not smoke here.

- B. You won't smoke here.

- C. You are not smoking here.

- D. Don't you know smoking here?

Answer: A

44. Mr Gebre says that we can borrow his house as long as we leave it clean and tidy.

Which Report of permission is/are correct?

- A. He says we can use the car, too.

- B. He said we could use the car, too.

- C. He said we would use the car, too.

- D. A and B are possible.

Clues: We use **can** (for the present/the future) and **could** (for the past) to report permission.

Choice (A) is present report of permission.

Choice (B) is past report of permission.

Answer: D

45. Last century women _____ vote.

- A. couldn't

- C. can't

- B. were not allowed

- D. A and B

Clues: To report that in the past some had general

permission to do something, that is, to do it at any time, we can use either **could** or **was/were able to**.

47. Although he didn't have a ticket, Gemechis _____
(UEE)

A. could C. may be allowed to
B. was allowed to D. A and B

Clue: To report permission for one particular past action, we use **was/were allowed to**, but **not could**.

48. We _____ open the presents until Christmas.
A. couldn't C. can't be
B. weren't allowed to D. A and B

Clue: In negative sentences, we can use either **couldn't** or **'wasn't/weren't allowed to'** to report that permission was not given in general or particular situation.

49. Since he was admitted to hospital we _____ visit him.
A. haven't allow to C. haven't been allowed
B. couldn't be able to D. weren't allowed to

50. She is unlikely to _____ travel on that airline again.
A. be allowed to C. can be able to
B. have been allowed to D. be able to

Clues: We can use **be allowed to** after infinitive 'to'.

51. Before the meeting finished, I _____ give my side of the story.
A. could C. can
B. was allowed to D. must

It is about a particular permission.

- Answer: B (see the notes above)

- I. Rephrase these notices to give or refuse permission. Begin each sentence with 'You'

52. Thank you for not smoking
53. No camping or picnicking
54. Fishing strictly forbidden
55. Campers welcome
56. Private - Keep Out
57. Don't lean out of the window
58. No stopping

Give or refuse permission, using words in the box

- II. Come into have park ride use
you/here (can)
59. students /this lift (may not)
60. you these tickets (may)
61. nobody/my horse (can)
62. you/my room (can't)
63. employees/personal phone calls (may not)
64.

Suggested Answer

- I.
1. You mayn't smoke.
2. You are not allowed to camp or picnic here.
3. You are forbidden to fish here.
4. You may camp here.
5. This is private(property). You aren't permitted to enter.
6. You mustn't lean out of window.
7. You can't stop here.
II.
8. You can park here.
9. Student's may not use this lift.
10. You may have these tickets.
11. Nobody can ride my horse.
12. You can't come into my room.
13. Employees may not make personal phone calls.

7.3. Modals Expressing "Possibility"

(may /might/could(not))

General information

- If we are referring to possibility, we use **may**, **might** or **could + be/ have been**.

Study

She **may/might/could** be at office now.

She **may/might/could** have been at office yesterday.

Or

We use **may**, **might**, **could + full verb**.

She may/might/could work at office. Or
 She may/ might/could be working at office.
 She may/might/could have worked at office. Or
 She may/might/could have been working yesterday.

• **Points to note:**

- We use **may** and **might** (but not usually **can**) to say that things are possible – perhaps they are true, or perhaps they will happen.

Examples: 'Who is that?' 'I am not sure. It may be Chala.
 (NOT: It can be Chala)

I might go and see Mamush at the weekend.

The company might lose money this year.

- To say that **perhaps** things are not true, or will not happen, we use **may/might not**.

I may/might not get that new job after all.

- **Might** sometimes suggest a smaller possibility.

Compare

Asefa may be at home. (perhaps a 50 % chance)

I may go to Adama tomorrow. (perhaps a 50 percent chance)

Abera might/could go with us. (perhaps a 30 percent chance)

According to the radio, it may rain today. (50 %)

It might /could even snow. (30% chance to happen)

- Thus, **may /can** = expresses/ more.(50%) chance to happen.

Might/could= expresses less chance to happen.

Note: The different between **may/might not** and **can't**

Examples: The game may/might not finish before ten.

(perhaps it won't)

The game can't finish before ten-(It is not possible)

It only started at 9:30.

7.3.1 Certain and uncertain answer to questions

1. A 'certain' question may produce an 'uncertain' answer.
 • Does he like fish? - He might (do) He could (do)
 He may (do) He may not
2. An 'uncertain' question may produce 'certain' answer.
 • Can he still be working? - Yes, he is.
3. We use **be** and **have been** to answer questions with **be**.
 • Is he ill? - He may be.

- Was he ill? - He may have been. (NOT: he may)
 We use **do/ done** to replace other verbs, though this is optional.

4. Will you catch the early train? - I may / I may do.

• Has he received my message? - He could have / He could have done.

5. We also answer Wh- questions with 'certain' or 'uncertainty'
 • What's her name? - It's Rahel. (certain)

• It may/might be Rahel (uncertain)
 • What was his name? - It was Gemechu (certain)
 • It may /might haven't been Gemechu. (uncertain)

Illustrative Examples

65. Who is more likely to be going to Dire Dawa tomorrow?

Abebe: I may be going to Dire Dawa tomorrow.

Hagos: I might be going to Dire Dawa tomorrow.

A. Abebe C. Both
 B. Hagos D. We don't know

Clues: 'may' is more likely/ has more chance to happen.

(see the notes) Answer: A

66. She _____ be at home. I 'will phone home and find out.

Which verb form introduces the sentence **correctly**.

A. can B. may C. might D. could

Clues: The second sentence tells us there will be a greater chance that she is at home.

Answer: B

67. Which reply/ replies is /are wrong?

• Where is Sarah?

A. She can be with her friend.
 B. She may be with her friend.
 C. She could be with her friend.
 D. She might be with her friend.

Clues: We always prefer **could**, **may** and **might** to **can** to show that we are giving an opinion about which we are **unsure**.

(see Q 38,74 above) Answer: A

68. The temperature _____ sometimes reach 35 C° in July.

A. could B. may C. can D. might

Clues: We can use **can** in affirmative sentence when we

talk about more general possibility of something happening rather than the possibility of something happening in a particular situation. (see permission)

69. It _____ rain later.

A. can C. could

B. may D. might

E. all, but A
Clues: We use may/might/could for the possibility of something happening in a particular situation.

70. Kebelesh: I wonder why Getaneh didn't answer the phone.
Misire: She _____ asleep. Answer: E

A. might have been C. can be

B. was asleep D. would be

Clues: To express a past possibility, we use may/might/could + have been (V3)

Examples: Bilise: I can't find my pen anywhere.

Chala: You might have left it in the class.

(perhaps you left it in the class)

• She might have been asleep = perhaps she was asleep

71. Worku: I was surprised that Meron wasn't at the meeting.

Solomon: She _____ about it.

A. may not hear

C. couldn't hear

B. can't hear

D. might have heard

(see Q. 78 above) Answer: D

72. _____ it be that you don't want to leave?

A. can

B. may

C. could

D. would

Answer: C

73. There are plans to rebuild the town center, but _____ it happen for another ten years.

A. may not

B. might not

C. won't

D. A and B

Clues: We use may not/might not to say that it is possible that something is not true.

Thus, the question above means (it is possible that it won't happen for another ten years)

Answer: D

74. It is possible that they don't live her any longer.

A. They might not live her any longer.

B. They can't live her any longer.

Answer: A

75. It is not possible that they are twins.

231

A. They might not be twins.

Answer: B

B. They can't be twins.

C. It could be that they are not married.

D. They might not be married.

Answer: A

E. They can't be married.

(For the details of Q 83.84 & 85 see the previous notes)

It is not possible that she saw you.

Is the same as:

A. She couldn't have seen you.

B. She can't see you.

C. She might not have seen you.

D. A and C

Clues: Couldn't (or negative) is different from may not and might not.

• Couldn't have + V3 = it is not possible that something happened.

• May/might not have + V3 = it is possible that something didn't happen (perhaps it did, perhaps not)

• May not have been is also possible

Answer: C

76. Dawit: I wonder why she didn't say 'hello'.

Siay: She you (=perhaps she didn't see you; perhaps she did)

A. She might not have seen

B. She can't have seen

C. She couldn't have seen

D. All

Answer: A

Note: might/may/could have + V3 = expresses past possibility (perfect modals)

77. Perhaps it will not snow. Is the same as:

A. It can't snow

C. It might not have snowed

B. It may not snow

D. It could snow

Clues: To express a future possibility, we use may/might/could (not) + V1

Answer: B

Put in 'may/mightn't or can't

10. I'll go to the supermarket, but it _____ be open.

11. Their car aren't outside. They _____ at home; I am not sure.

12. I _____ pass the exam, but I'm hoping for the best.

13. 'You've won first prize in the lottery' - No, it _____ be

true.

84. He has got a strong French accent. He
 85. 'Can I see you tomorrow?' 'perhaps. I
 I'll see'

II. Say the sentences 'certain/ possible'

86. My boss is away on holiday.
 87. He **could** replay by the weekend.
 88. He **borrowed** my ladder.
 89. She **might have been** to London.
 90. He **will be** back next week.
 91. My wife **may be** with him.

III. Write 'uncertain' answers to the questions

92. Where is Misrak today?
 93. Where was Misrak today?
 94. What is Betty doing at the moment?
 95. What was Betty doing yesterday?
 96. Where has Alemu parked the car?
 97. What times does the train leave?

IV. Give Uncertain (Possibility). Answer to the questions

98. Does she still live in London?
 99. Has he finished work?
 100. Where are they living?
 101. When will he leave?

Suggested Answer

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| I. | II. |
| 80. may not/ might not | 86. certainty |
| 81. may be | 87. possibility |
| 82. may not (uncertainty) | 88. certainty |
| 83. can't (certainty) | 89. possibility |
| 84. can't (certainty) | 90. certainty |
| 85. may not/might not | 91. possibility |

- IV.
 92. She **may/might/could be** at home.
 93. She **may/might/could have been** at home
 94. She **may/might/could be** working.

- 233
 95. He **may/might/could have been** working.
 96. It **may/might/could have** parked in the car park.
 97. It **may/might/could** leave at ten.

- V.
 98. Yes, she **may (do)**
 99. Yes, he **may have (done)**
 100. They **might be** leaving abroad
 101. I **may** leave tomorrow

7.4 Modals Expressing 'Deduction'

(must be/ must have been; can't be/ can't have been)

- We express certainty with **be** (is, am, are...) or any full verb:
 As: He is here. He lives here.
- We express deduction with **must be/can't be, must have been, can't/couldn't have been**:
 As: He **must be** at home/ he **can't be** out.
 He **must have been** yesterday. Or with verbs other than **be**:
 As: He **must live** abroad. He **must have lived** abroad.

7.4.1. Two Kinds of 'must be'

- We use 'must be' in the present to express deduction.
 You **haven't eaten** for hours.
 (So you **must be** hungry (deduction) or drawing conclusion)
- The negative of **must be** (=deduction) is **can't be**.
 (NOT: mustn't be)
 You have only just eaten.
 (So you **can't be** angry (drawing conclusion)
 (NOT: mustn't be)
- We can also use **must (be)** to express total obligation.
 This is a hospital ⇒ You **must be** quiet.
- The negative of **must (be)** (= total obligation) is **mustn't** or **mustn't be** (= prohibition, not deduction)
 ⇒ You **mustn't be** noisy outside a hospital.
 (NOT: can't be)

7.4.2 'must have been', 'can/couldn't have been', 'had to be / didn't have to be'

- We express deduction about the past with must have been.
You hadn't eaten for hours.
(So you must have been hungry.)
- The negative of must have been is can't/couldn't have been.
(NOT: mustn't have been)
You had already eaten.
(So you can't/couldn't have been hungry.)
(NOT: mustn't have been)
- Must (= total obligation)** is not a 'complete verb'
- So, we use 'had to' in the past (must = had to)
The meeting was at 10 this morning and I had to be there.
(NOT: must have been)
- The negative of had to is didn't have to.
It was a holiday yesterday, so I didn't have to be at work.
(NOT: mustn't have been)

Illustrative Examples

102. You: I haven't eaten anything since breakfast.

Colleague: _____

- A. You must be very hungry.
- B. I had bread and tea for breakfast.
- C. What would you like for breakfast?
- D. Do you want to join us for coffee?

Clues: If you haven't eaten anything, it is undoubtedly that you feel hungry by now. It is about a present deduction.

Example: It is now 12 o'clock pm. I've been traveling since morning, so you must be tired. (read the notes) Answer: A

103. He knows a lot about flying planes.

- He _____ a pilot when he was young
- A. must be
 - B. must have been
 - C. could have been
 - D. would be

Clues: In drawing a conclusion (deduction) about something, we use 'must be' and its past past form is 'must have been'

Example: She's late. She must have missed the train. Answer: B
(NOT: must miss)

away. His car is outside.

104. He _____ away. His car is outside.
- A. can't go
 - B. must not go
 - C. can't have gone
 - D. may not have gone

Clues: The past form of must be = must have been.
The negative of must be = can't be (not: mustn't be)
The past form of can't be = can't/couldn't have been
(Not: mustn't have been)

105. The exam was easy. I am sure I've passed.

- > This is the same as:
- A. I must have passed.
 - B. I can't have failed.
 - C. I might have passed.
 - D. A and B.

Clues: The negative form of must have been = can't/couldn't have been. Answer: C

106. Her light is on. She is certainly in. (see the notes)

> Is the same as

- A. She must be in
- B. She can't be in
- C. She can be in
- D. She might be in
- E. A and B

Clues: The present deduction uses must be (must + full verb) or can't be ((-NOT: mustn't be))

Note: It must be true = it is certain that it is true
It can't be true = it is certainly not true. Answer: E

107. It seems certain that he has gone.

- A. he must have gone home
- B. he had to go home
- C. he must go home
- D. he may have gone home

(Past deduction) Answer: A

108. It was necessary for him to go home. This is the same as

- A. he should have gone home.
- B. he had to go home.
- C. he must go home.
- D. he might have gone home.

Clues: The above question is about something necessary/obligatory in the past, not about deduction.

- > We use must / must not = for present (total obligation)
- > Its past form is had to / didn't have to (NOT: mustn't have to)

Examples

The meeting is at 10 o'clock sharp and you **mustn't** be late.
The fire alarm went and we **had to** get out of the building in two minutes. (Both sentences are about **necessity/obligation**.)

109. We had enough foreign currency left at the end of the holiday, so I buy any more.

A. must not C. couldn't have to
B. had to D. didn't have to

Clues: To express the **absence of obligation** in the **past** we use **didn't have to**.

110. The fridge is empty. Bona has certainly not been shopping. This is the same as:

A. Bona **can't have been** shopping.
B. Bona **couldn't have been** shopping.
C. Bona **didn't have to be** shopping.
D. A and B.

Clues: The **opposite** of **must have been** (past deduction) is **can't / couldn't have been**.

111. She is very bad tempered, I feel sure she doesn't have many friends.

Is the same as:

A. She **can't have** many friends.
B. She **must have** few friends.
C. She **mustn't have** many friends.
D. A and B

Clues: The **negative** of **must be** is **can't be**.

- I. Supply 'must be, can't be, 'mustn't be'

112. We _____ late for the train or we'll miss our connection.
113. I haven't seen the dress before. It _____ a new one.
114. Your family _____ asleep. There are no lights in the house.
115. You _____ hungry. You've just eaten a large meal.
116. Listen to his accent. He is certainly not American. He _____ English.
117. I don't understand the hand writing on his envelope. It _____ from anyone we know.

- II. Supply 'must have been', 'can't/couldn't have been', 'had to be/didn't have to (be)'

118. I left a message on your answer phone last night. You _____ out.
119. You _____ waiting long. After all, I'm only five minutes late.
120. When I was a boy we _____ sitting at our desks working before the boss got in.
121. Taye knew exactly what to do. I _____ tell him twice.

- III. Write 'certain' or 'deduction' against each one.

122. He **is** writing a book. _____
123. He **must** enjoy life. _____
124. Now he **lives** in an enormous house. _____
125. He **can't have been** working very hard on his work. _____
126. He **must have done** a lot of research for his book. _____

Suggested answer

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|------|----------------------|
| 112. mustn't be (obligation) | II. | 118. must have been |
| 113. must be | | 119. can't have been |
| 114. must be | | 120. had to be |
| 115. can't be | | 121. didn't have to |
| 116. must be | III. | 122. certainty |
| 117. can't be | | 123. deduction |
| | | 124. certainty |
| | | 125. deduction |
| | | 126. deduction |

7.5. Modals expressing "Advice / Necessity"

- 7.5.1. It is advisable → It is necessary
(should, ought to, had better, have to/ have got to, must)
• To say that something is advisable/ necessary (in our opinion) we use:

A. Should* and 'ought to'

(= in my opinion it is **advisable**, but there is some choice)

- You **should** see a doctor.
- We **ought to** vote in the next election.

B. **had better**

is stronger than the two, even it is warning.

- You **had better** see a doctor.
(= That's my urgent advice. There may be a consequence if you ignore it.)

C. **Have to, have got to (less formal) and**

Must. (= in my opinion) you have no choice;

- You **have to/ have got to/ must** see a doctor.
(= That's the strongest advice I can give you. Don't ignore it!)

7.5.2. **Must, have to, and have got to**

A. We often use must, have to and have got to in place of each other, but sometimes not.

B. We tend to prefer must:

- When we refer to ourselves (with I/ we):
I **must** weed this garden.
- With 'you' to express urgency:
You **must** phone home at once.
- In public notices, etc.: Cyclists **must** dismount.
- (- can't you stop yourself?): **must** you interfere?
- Pressing invitations or advice: You **must** come and see us. You **must** repair that fence.

C. We often use have to (have got to) to refer to outside authority.
I **have to/ have got to** pay my road tax soon.

7.5.3. **Expressing necessity in other tenses**

A. **must** can refer to the present or the future.

- I **must** speak to her today (present)
- I **must** speak to her tomorrow (future)

B. **must** is not a 'complete verb', so we use 'have to' to make up its 'missing parts'.

- I **shall/ will have to** phone her tomorrow. (or I **must** phone her tomorrow - future).
- I **had to** spend the day in a meeting (past).

- I **have had to** tell you before (present perfect).
- I **am having to/ I've been having to** get up earlier this year. (progressive forms)

C. **Had to** shows that we couldn't avoid doing something.
I **had to** live at two. (and I did)

D. **Should have** shows we've failed to do something.
I **should have** left at two. (and I didn't)
(For 'had to' see under deduction)

7.5.4. **It is not advisable → it's forbidden**

- We use the following words to say that something is not advisable or it is forbidden to do.

A. **Shouldn't and oughtn't to**

To say in my opinion it isn't advisable but there is some choice.

You **shouldn't** drive too fast.

You **oughtn't** to drive too fast.

(Meaning: This is my advice/opinion, but ignore it if you want to)

B. **Had better not** is stronger, even a warning.

You **had better not** lose your passport.

(Meaning: This is my urgent advice. There may be consequence if you ignore it)

C. **Can't and mustn't**

To say that you have no choice; it is forbidden)

You **can't / mustn't** stop on a motorway.

(Meaning: It is forbidden/=a giant's law)

7.5.5. **Mustn't, needn't, don't have to, haven't got to**

A. **must, have to, have got to** generally mean the same in the affirmative.

But '**mustn't**' never means the same as '**don't have to/ haven't got to**'

B. **mustn't** means 'its forbidden'

- Life belts **mustn't** be removed (No choice)

C. We can use **needn't, don't have to and haven't got to**

- I **needn't/ don't have to/ haven't got to** go to the office tomorrow.

7.5.6. Needn't have, didn't have to, didn't need to

- A. These sentences mean I went there but it wasn't necessary.
- I **needn't** have gone to the office yesterday. (but I went)
 - I **didn't have to** / **didn't need to** go to the office yesterday. (but I went)

Note: (have and need are stressed in speech)

- B. Compare **didn't have to** and **didn't need to** without stress.
- I **didn't have to** go to the office yesterday.
 - I **didn't need to** go to the office yesterday.
- (= I knew in advance it wasn't necessary to go to the office and I didn't go)

7.5.7. 'Need' as modal and as full verb

- A. We use **need** as modal (without **to** after it) mainly in the negative to mean 'it is not necessary'
- I **needn't** go to the meeting today. (present)
 - I **needn't** have gone to the meeting yesterday.
- B. In the affirmative, we use **need** as a modal.
- In questions: **Need** you go so soon?
Need you have told him the truth?
 - With negative adverbs: (eg: **hardly**)
I **need hardly** tell you how important this is
- C. Otherwise, we generally use the full verb **'need to'** (is used like any regular verb)
- I **need to** go to the dentist this morning.
 - I **don't need to** go to the dentist this morning.
 - I **needed to** go to the dentist this morning.
 - I **didn't need to** go to the dentist this morning.

7.5.8. There + modal auxiliaries

- Just as 'there will' combine with **be** (there is / was / has been, etc), it will combine with modals.
- There **could** be no doubt about it.
There **must** be a mistake.
- There **can't** have been any doubt about it.
There **might** have been a mistake.

- There **never** used to be anyone living next door.
- There **might** have been someone outside.
(we'll see about **would** and **used to** in simple past tense)

7.5.9. 'Be supposed to'

- We can use **be supposed to** + infinitive to talk about rules: to say what people or things should do.

Examples

You are **supposed to** start work at 2.30 in the morning.
You are **not supposed to** park on double yellow lines.

- We can also use **be supposed to** to talk about what people believe or expect.

Examples:

The staff is **supposed to** kill flies.
He is **supposed to** be rich.
He **was supposed to** be here an hour ago. Where is he?
That's a strange picture. What is it **supposed to** be?

Illustrative Examples

127. Which sentence does mean it is/was necessary?

- A. I **must** get to the meeting before 1.30.
- B. She **had to** complete the test in ten minutes.
- C. I **had better** hurry, or I'll be late.
- D. A and B

Clues: We use **had to** as the past form of **must** because 'must' doesn't have its own past. **Answer: D**

128. Which sentence does mean 'it is/was advisable'?

- A. You **should** listen more carefully.
- B. We **ought to** have stopped for a meal on the way.
- C. We **had better** hurry, or we'll be late.
- D. All.

Clues: We can **should**, **ought to** and **had better** to say that doing something is advisable although **had better** is stronger than the two. **Answer D**

129. We _____ stop for petrol soon. The tank is almost empty.

- A. had better C. ought to
B. should D. must

Clues: We use **had better** to say that something is advisable to do. If you don't, there will be a problem/ a danger.

Examples: Shall I take an umbrella?

Yes, you **had better**. It may rain.

(If you don't, you'll get wet)

Answer: A

Note: The negative form of **had better** is **had better not**.

130. Which sentence is more emphatic?

- A. It is a great film. You **should** go and see it.
B. The film starts at 11.30. You'd **better** go now, or you'll be late.
C. You **ought to** apply for this job.
D. All are correct.

Answer: B

131. I wonder where Genet is. She _____ here by now.

- A. must be C. should be
B. ought to be D. had better be

Clues: When we express something we expect or not right, we use **should**, **not ought to** or **had better**.

Example: The price on this packet is wrong.

It **should be** Birr 50, not birr 80.

(= This is what I always expect)

Answer: C

132. Helen has been studying hard for her UEE, so she _____ pass.

- A. may B. had better C. must D. should

Clues: This is also what we expect from Helen's studying hard. (That is to pass UEE)

Answer: D

133. I think the government _____ do more to help orphans.

- A. should B. can C. had better D. must

Clues: We often use **should** with **I think/ I don't think/ Do you think**.

Examples: I don't think you **should** work hard this morning.

Do you think I **should** apply for this job? Answer: A

Note: **Should** and **ought to** are always interchangeable.

We can say: Do you think I **ought to** apply for this job?

She's been studying hard, so she **ought to** pass.
(see Q 147, 149 above)

1. You **should** contact me.
2. You **must** contact me.

Which one does mean, 'You have no choice'?

- A. 1 B. 2

Clues: **Should** is not as strong as must.

Examples: He **should** apologize her (= It'd be a good thing)
He **must** apologize her (= he has no alternative)

Answer: B

135. You don't look very well. You _____ to work today.

- A. had better not go C. shouldn't go
B. had not better go D. had better go not

Clues: The negative form of **had better** is **had better not** + simple verb (V1). (NOT: had better not to)

Answer: A

136. I think all driver _____ wear a seat belts.

- A. must C. should
B. had better D. can

Clues: We use **had better** only for a particular situation (not for things in general), and **should** is for things in general.

(General advice/opinion) Answer: C

137. It is cold today. You _____ wear a coat when you go out, please.

- A. should C. must
B. had better D. ought to

(particular opinion) Answer: B

138. Which is not a problem / danger if you don't do?

- A. It is a great film. You **should** go and see it.
B. The film starts at 11.30. You **had better** go now or you will be late for.

Answer: A

Note: You **should have done** something = you didn't do it but it would have been the right thing to do; you **shouldn't have done** something = you did it but it would have been the right thing not to do.

139. He _____ me before he took my bike. (I'm annoyed)

- A. should have asked C. must have asked
B. ought to have asked D. A & B

Clues: The speaker feels annoyed because someone took his

bike without his permission. He should have asked for permission, but he didn't.

Note: choice (C) is for past deduction.

140. You _____ to our conversation. It was private.

- A. might not have been listening
- B. couldn't have been listening
- C. shouldn't have been listening
- D. mustn't have been listening

Clues: You shouldn't/ought not to have been listening, means you were listening.

141. You should have gone to the concert. It was fantastic.

This means:

- A. You went to the concert.
- B. You didn't went to.

142. They shouldn't have come back to the city. The war is still on.

This means: A. They came back.

B. They didn't come back.

143. It is a strange that he _____ late. He is usually on time.

- A. must be
- B. ought to be
- C. should be
- D. had better be

Clues: We use should after a number of adjectives like strange, Surprised, funny, natural, etc.

Examples I was surprised that she should say such a thing.

It was funny that you should say that. It was going to say the same thing.

144. What do you suggest _____

- A. should do
- B. must do
- C. ought to do
- D. had better do

Clues: We can use should after a number of verbs like suggest, propose, recommend, insist, etc.

Examples: I demanded that he should apologize.

Father suggested that I should look for another job.

They insisted that we should have dinner with them.

145. Eating sweets _____ be bad for your teeth.

- A. should
- B. must
- C. ought to
- D. is supposed to

Clues: We use (be) supposed to when we report what many peoples think is true.

Examples Walking under a ladder is supposed to be unlucky.
Drinking hot milk before you go to bed is supposed to help you sleep.

Note: We use supposed to be commonly in spoken English to express a less strong obligation.

146. The work _____ start last week.

- A. is supposed to
- B. can be supposed to
- C. were supposed to
- D. was supposed to

Clues: Since the tense is past (last week) - we should use 'was'.

Answer: D

147. To get a cheap ticket, you _____ book in advance.

- A. must
- B. have to
- C. have go to
- D. all

Clues: When we say that it is necessary to do something, we use must/have (go) to interchangeably. But there is sometimes slight difference.

Answer: D

Note: We always use have to /have got to to refer to outside

authority impersonal, and must is personal (inside authority)

have got to is less formal than the others, and is particularly common in spoken, not in written English.

148. I _____ see the head teacher. She has called me to her office.

- A. have to
- B. must
- C. should
- D. can

Clues: This is about an outside circumstance /authority.

Answer: A

149. I _____ see the head teacher. I want to discuss with her.

- A. have to
- B. must
- C. should
- D. can

Clues: This is about what the speaker her /himself decides to do or necessary (inside authority)

Answer: B

Note: We can use need to with similar meaning to must/have (got) to.

150. Before you buy house you _____ consider all the costs.

- A. need to
- B. must
- C. have (got) to
- D. all are possible

Answer: B

151. She _____ drink two cups of coffee in the morning before she feels really awake.
- A. has to C. must
B. has got to D. A and B

Clues: We prefer have (got) to / has (got) to when we talk about a necessity that is characteristic of person (not: must)

Example: Yones has to / has got to have at least eight hours sleep a night.

152. To can't turn right here, you _____ turn left because of the traffic system.
- A. must B. have to C. have got to D. B & C

Note: must can stand for both present and future or we can use will have to.

153. In which sentence is 'need' used as an ordinary or full verb?
- A. You needn't speak loudly.
B. She needn't come with us if she doesn't want to.
C. She is thirsty. She needs a drink.
D. Need you go home soon?

154. I _____ go to the office tomorrow.
- A. needn't C. haven't got to
B. don't have to D. all

Clues: We can use them all in place of each other to mean it is not necessary (for future or present)

155. It would be good to see you, but you _____ come if you are busy.
- A. mustn't C. don't need to E. all except A
B. don't have to D. need not

156. You _____ put anything on the shelves until the glue has set hard.
- A. needn't B. mustn't C. don't have to D. all

Note: To talk about a general necessity, we prefer 'don't need to' (NOT: needn't.)

157. You _____ be over 18 to get in to a disco.
- A. mustn't C. needn't
B. don't need to D. all

Note: To give permission not to do something, we can use either needn't or don't need to.

158. You _____ the grass, I will do it later.
- A. must not C. needn't
B. don't need to D. B & C

But we say you mustn't walk on the grass (= it is not allowed or it is forbidden)

159. Robel and Dessu phoned to say that they couldn't come to eat, so I _____.
- A. didn't need to C. can't have to
B. didn't have to D. A and B

Clues: When we say that it was not necessary to do something in the past, and it wasn't done we use didn't need to or didn't have to.

Example: I didn't have to / didn't need to go to office yesterday. (= I knew in advance it wasn't necessary to go the office, and I didn't go)

160. _____ dinner. Just it was ready. Robel and Dessu phoned to say that they couldn't come to eat.
- A. needn't have cooked C. needn't cook
B. don't need to have cooked D. mustn't cook

Clues: To show that we think something that was done was not, in fact, necessary we use needn't have + v3. (the question is the opposite to Q176)

161. Complete the sentences with either 'needn't have or didn't need to' followed by an appropriate verb.

161. I bought a new car last year, and then a month later I won one in a competition. So I _____ all that money.

162. The accident _____ he was going to, if only he had got his lights repaired when he said.

163. I _____ an interview. They accepted me without one.

164. I got a lift to the station, so I _____ a taxi after all.

165. Almay was feeling a lot better by the weekend, so we _____ shopping for her.

II. Match A and B to show the effect of the verbs 'A'

166. You mustn't park near a zebra crossing
 167. You shouldn't eat so much chocolate cake.
 168. You can't use that footpath. It is closed.
 169. You had better not be late for the lecture.

- A. 'not advisable' - warning
 B. 'forbidden' - law
 C. 'not advisable' - personal
 D. 'not possible here'

III. Respond to these statements with 'shouldn't have done' or 'ought not to have done'

170. I had to stop on the Motor way _____
 171. Abel read your letter _____
 172. She left the front door unlocked _____
 173. I borrowed your book this morning _____

IV. Supply the forms 'must' or 'have (got) to' which 'feel right' in these sentences.

174. We _____ write and let us know you've arrived safely.
 175. You _____ be at my desk by 7.00 every morning.
 176. I _____ pay this electricity bill by the end of the week.
 177. All visitors _____ report to the duty officer.
 We always clock in when we arrive at work.

V. Supply 'mustn't' or 'needn't / don't have to / haven't got to'

178. You _____ work such long hours. You won't earn any more.
 179. Passengers _____ smoke in the toilets.
 180. You _____ attend the meeting tomorrow. It's not important.
 181. You _____ attend the meeting tomorrow. It's for union officials only.
 182. We _____ worry about Kebede. He's just phoned to say he is all right.
 183. Are you going to read the report? No, I _____. It is confidential.
 184. Visitors _____ enter the laboratories without _____

- permission. _____ always wear protective clothing in the factory.
 185. We _____ wear a uniform. It isn't obligatory.
 186. They _____ go to the party if you don't want to, nobody is forcing you.
 187. You _____ forget to pay the electricity bill.
 188. We'll be cut off. _____ waste money like that. It worries your parents.
 189. You really _____ leave the office last. She can go when she is ready.
 190. She _____

Suggested Answers

- | | |
|---|--|
| I. 161. needn't have spent | II. 166. b |
| 162. needn't have happened | 167. c |
| 163. didn't need to have | 168. d |
| 164. didn't need to take | 169. a |
| 165. didn't need to do | |
| III. 170. You shouldn't have done that | |
| 171. He shouldn't have done that | |
| 172. She shouldn't have done that | |
| 173. You shouldn't have done that | |
| (Note: ought not to have done is also possible) | |
| IV. 174. have got to/ must | |
| 175. must | |
| 176. have (got) to/ must | |
| 177. ...have to/must | |
| V. 178. don't have to/ needn't/ got to | 185. must |
| 179. mustn't | 186. mustn't |
| 180. needn't /don't have to/ haven't got to | |
| 181. mustn't | 187. needn't /don't have to haven't got to |
| 182. needn't | 188. mustn't |
| 183. mustn't | 189. mustn't |
| 184. mustn't | 190. doesn't have to/ needn't/ hasn't got to |

8. ACTIVE and PASSIVE PATTERN

General Informations

When 'A' does something to 'B', there are often two ways to talk about it: 'active' and 'passive'.

We use active verbs if we want 'A' to be the subject.
We use passive verbs if we want 'B' to be the subject.

8.1. Basic Rules

- We can turn active voice in passive voice by using some guidelines. It is not much difficult for us to change the voice of the verb.

1. A sentence can be separated into subject, verb and object.

Example: she paints a picture.
Sub V obj

2. The object of the sentence must be turned into subject.

Example: She paints a picture.
Sub V obj

A picture is painted by her.
Sub V obj

3. The 'be' form must be used according to the tense of the verb. (BE: is, am, are, been)

Example: A picture 'is'

4. Past participle of the verb must be used.

Example: A picture is painted.
(Paint- painted-painted)

5. Preposition 'by' must be added, but sometimes 'optional'

Example: A picture is painted by (her).

6. The subject must be made the object.

8.2. Omission of the subject: 'passive'

- In some of the sentences, the object of the verb is omitted. Because the attention is not paid to the fact who does the action but to the action itself.
- In such cases, the agent of the action is either a well-known person or unidentified. It is therefore not necessary for us to mention the agent of the action.

Examples:

The window was broken. (by somebody)

The plane was hijacked yesterday. (by some group)

Note: Here the agents are unidentified and not recognized.

8.3. Transitive verb: Two objects.

- A transitive verb is sometimes followed two objects.
- In such cases, the sentence may have two passive forms.

Examples

1. The manager granted me the permission (active).

- The permission was granted to me (passive).
- I was granted the permission (passive).

Note: Me (indirect object) and the permission (direct object).

2. The principal issued me the conduct certificate (active).

- The conduct certificate was issued to me (passive).
- I was issued the conduct certificate (passive).

Note: me and the conduct certificate are objects.

(me = Indirect; conduct certificate = Direct)

3. My father bought me a good book (active)

A book was bought for me } by my father.
I was bought a good book }

Note: me and a good book are two objects.

(me = Indirect; good book = Direct)

4. They offered him a nice job (active).

A nice job was offered to him } by them.
He was offered a nice job }

Note: him and a nice job are two objects
(him = Indirect; nice job = Direct)

8.4. Preposition with Passive

- Certain verbs are always followed by prepositions.
So a preposition after the verb must be retained in passive voice.
- They laughed at the poor beggar. (active)
▪ The poor beggar was laughed at by them. (passive)
 - They looked after the girl. (active)
▪ The girl was looked after by them. (passive)
 - We called in the mechanic. (active)
▪ The mechanic was called in by us. (passive)
 - I sent for the doctor. (active)
▪ The doctor was sent for by me. (passive)

8.5. Imperative with passive

- Various ideas like commands / orders / requests may be expressed in passive voice.

Rule

You are asked / requested / begged / implored / ordered / commanded total advised + to + verb.

Examples

Please post this letter (active).
You are requested to post this letter. (passive)
Shut the door. (active)
You are ordered to shut the door. (passive)
Don't wait for me. (active)
You are told not to wait for me.
(passive) Apply for leave. (active)
You are advised to apply for leave. (passive)
Teach me English. (active)
You are asked to teach me English. (passive)

8.6. 'Let' in passive.

- Imperative sentence can be turned into passive voice by using 'let'

Pattern = Let + object + be + past participle

Examples:

Active

Park the car.
Give up smoking.
Post this letter.
Pay the amount.

Passive

Let the car be parked.
Let smoking be given up.
Let this letter be posted.
Let the amount be paid.

8.7. Infinitive with passive pattern

Pattern = Subject + verb + object + to be + verb

Examples:

Active

I want to write the letter.
They have no money to spend.
I have letters to write.
I expect Martha to love me.

Passive

I want the letter to be written.
They have no money to be spent.
I have letters to be written.
I expect to be loved by Martha.

8.8. It is / It was time + for + obj + passive form

Examples

Active

It is time to send a telegram.
It is time to stop the work.
It was time to repair the watch.

Passive

It is time for the telegram to be sent.
It is time for the work to be stopped.
It was time for the watch to be repaired.

8.9. 'That'-clause with passive

- Passive voice is sometimes or very often used to introduce a that clause.

Examples:

Active

We say that she is a teacher.

They believed that he killed his wife.

We admit that she has spoiled her life.

Passive

It is said that she is a teacher.

It is believed that he killed his wife.

It is admitted that she has spoiled her life.

8.10. Object complement in passive

- Sentences with object complement may be turned into passive voice.

Examples:

We elected him president. (active)

He was elected president. (passive)

They named him Mamush. (active)

He was named Mamush. (passive)

I consider Meseret very beautiful. (passive)

Meseret is considered very beautiful. (passive)

8.11. Interrogative sentence with passive.

- All the questions in Active voice can be changed into passive voice. But questions are rarely made in passive.
- Helping verbs **do, does, did** are changed into the possible verb **be (is, am, are, was, were)** in passive accordingly.

Examples

Active voice

Do you speak English?

Does Eden loves you?

Did you post the letter?

Has she cooked the food?

Will you help me?

Passive voice

Is English spoken by you?

Are you loved by Eden?

Was the letter posted by you?

Has the food been cooked by her?

Shall I be helped by you?

Was he writing the letter?

What do you know about computers?

Was the letter being written by him?

What is known about computers?

8.12. Other prepositions with passive (without 'by')

- A few verbs in passive voice are followed by a number of prepositions. In such cases, 'by' is not used.
- The list of such verbs are as follows:

Verb	preposition	Verb	Preposition
astonished	at	ground	in
annoyed	at	displeased	at
agitated	at	interested	in
amazed	at	killed	with
alarmed	at	lined	with
contained	in	overgrown	with
covered	with	pleased	with
crowded	with	rejoiced	at
disgusted	with	satisfied	with
disappointed	at	thronged	with
		surprised	at
		vexed	at

Examples

This bottle contains milk. (active)

Milk is contained in this bottle. (passive)

The film interests me. (active)

I am interested in the film. (passive)

Snow covered the houses. (active)

The houses were covered with snow. (active)

Her performance satisfied me. (active)

I was satisfied with her performance. (passive)

- { Her success rejoices me. (active)
 { I am rejoiced at her success. (passive)
- { Her decision surprised us. (active)
 { We were surprised at her decision. (passive)
- { Betty's words have displeased me. (active)
 { I have been displaced with Betty's words. (passive)

8.13. Verbs like "taste, smell, feel"

- Note the use of the above in passive voice verb carefully.

Examples

- { This medicine tastes bitter. (active)
 { This medicine is bitter when it is tasted. (passive)
- { The flower smells sweet. (active)
 { The flower is sweet when it is smelt. (passive)
- { The material feels thin. (active)
 { The material is thin when it is felt. (passive)

8.14. Passive with '-ing' forms (being seen)

- Many verbs are followed infinitives or -ing forms.

Examples

- I don't like being ignored.
 I don't like being talked about.
 She loves being photographed.
 (for infinitive, see 8.8)

8.15. 'Get' instead of 'be' (is, am, was, are ----)

- Something we make passive with 'get' instead of 'be' especially in spoken English.

Examples

- I get paid on Friday.

- (= I am paid on Friday)
 My window got broken by the wind.
 (= my window was broken by the wind)

8.16. Have something 'done'

- We use 'have something done' to say we arrange for somebody else to do something for us.

Examples

- Abush repaired the roof (= he repaired it himself).
 Abush had the roof repaired (= he arranged for somebody else).
 Did Almaz make the dress herself or did she have it made?
 No, I am going to have it repaired.
 Your hair looks nice. Have you had it cut?
 I think you should have that coat cleaned soon.

8.17. Be supposed to

- Sometimes 'is supposed to' = 'it is said to'

Examples

- Let's go and see that film.
 It is supposed to be very good. (= it is said to be very good)
 'Why was he arrested?' He is supposed to have kicked a police man.

- But sometimes 'supposed to' has a different meaning. Something is supposed to happen = it is planned, arranged or expected; often this is different from what really happens.

Examples

- I'd better hurry. It is nearly 3 o'clock and I am supposed to be meeting Shemsu at 4.00.
 (= I have arranged to meet Shemsu. I said I'd meet him)
 The train was supposed to arrive at 11.30 but I was an hour late.
 (= the train was expected to arrive at 11.30 according to the time table)

Examples

- You are not supposed to park your car here. It's private parking only.
 (= you are not allowed to park---)
 Ato Zewdu is much better after his illness but he is still not

supposed to do any heavy work.

(= his doctors have advised him not to do ---)

(For more details of 'supposed to' see unit 9, advice/ necessity)

SUMMARY

Active and passive voice Table

TENSE	FORM
Present simple	am/is/are + past participle
Pre. continuous tense	am/is/are + being + past participle
Pre. Perfect tense	have/has + been + past participle
Past simple	was/were + past participle
Past continuous tense	was /were + being + past participle
Past perfect tense	had + been + past participle
Future simple	will/shall + be + past participle
Future perfect tense	will/shall + have been + past
Modals	can/may/could/might/should + be/have been + past participle

Illustrative Examples

1. Are these windows dirty?
☞ Which reply sounds most natural? (passive).

- A. No, I have cleaned them.
B. No, they have been cleaned.
C. No, they have been cleaned by me.
D. No, I have been cleaned by them.

Clues: The present perfect passive is given by:

(Has/ have + been + v3)

'Windows' is a plural subject, so 'have' is used and 'by' is optional.

Answer: B

2. She gave her sister the car.

☞ This is the same as:

- A. Her sister was given the car.
B. The car was given to her by her sister.
C. She is given the car.
D. A and B

Clues: Verbs with two objects have two possible passive structures
▪ In the question above 'her sister' and 'the car' are the

- different objects, so there must be two passive sentences.
• The verb 'be' (is, am, was, were) depend on the number (person) and the tense.

Choice (C) is present passive Answer: D ☞ (see 8.4)

Note: Intransitive verbs are those which don't require an object to complete their sense, and they are non-passive form.
(e.g. grow, die, become, etc)

3. Which active voice can be changed into passive?

- A. My father died in car accident.
B. My sister grows fast.
C. The sky has become redder.
D. Fantahun killed a lion.

Clues: There should be an object in active voice. If not, we can't draw a passive form.

Fantahun killed a lion. (active)

A lion was killed by Fantahun. (passive)

4. Which is not passive?

- A. Coffee is grown in Ethiopia.
B. My bag has been stolen.
C. The door must be locked.
D. It is believed that climate change is man-made.
E. We have elected Abebe captain.

Clues: To be passive, a sentence should use be + v3, been + v3 and being + v3.

- Choice (E) is active. Its passive form is:
Abebe has been elected captain by us.

5. My husband is preparing lunch now.

☞ Which is its passive form?

- A. Lunch is prepared now.
B. Lunch is being prepared now.
C. Lunch is preparing now.
D. Lunch being prepared now.

Clues: The present continuous tense passive introduces being (is/ am/ are + being + v3).

She is cooking 'wet'. (active)

Wet is being cooked by her. (passive)

She always cooks 'wet'. (present active)

'Wet' is always cooked by her. (present passive)

Answer: B

6. The company has promoted Aschalew.
 A. The company has been promoted by Aschalew.
 B. Aschalew has promoted by the company.
 C. Aschalew is promoted by the company.
 D. Aschalew has been promoted by the company.

Clues: The perfect tense introduces been (has/have/had+been+V3) (see Q1) Answer: D

7. St. Paul's Cathedral _____ between 1675 and 178.
 A. were built C. has been built
 B. was built D. is built

Clues: We use was/ were + past participle to talk about a past passive. Example:
 Hamlet was written by Shakespeare in 1601.

8. I think ice-cream _____ with coconut milk. It is tasty. Answer: B
 A. is made C. can be made
 B. was made D. being made

Clues: To introduce a present passive (simple present tense), we use the formula be (is/am/are) + V3 Answer: A

Examples: 'Injera' is made of 'teff'.
 Car is made in Japan.

- Complete these sentences with suitable prepositions after passive structure (Don't use 'by')

9. I was shocked _____ her behaviour.
 10. The child is very frightened _____ spiders.
 11. We are worried _____ the future.
 12. I am excited _____ the possibility of getting a new job.
 13. Everybody is annoyed _____ you.
 14. I am surprised _____ you're attitude.
 15. The man is known _____ the police.
 16. The room was filled _____ thick smoke.
 17. The mountains are covered _____ snow.

Suggested Answer.

9. at 12. about/at
 8. of 13. with
 11. about 14. at 15. to 16. with
 17. in/with

(see 8.13 for prep. after passive)

18. Which is wrong?
 A. I am worried when you come home late.
 B. He fell in to the river and drowned.
 C. Stop chatting - there is work to be done.
 D. I given laptop by my uncle.

Clues: The sentence with two object can also have two passive forms. Using be (is/am/are/were/ is must in the passive, but when there are two verbs. (e.g. choice B)

- In choice (D), be (am/was) should have been used.

Answer: D

This room _____ only on special occasions. (UEE)

- A. has used C. uses
 B. is used D. is using

Clues: This room, is a singular subject, so 'is + V3' form should be used.

Answer: B

19. Some tradition's _____ (UEE)

- A. must preserved C. must be preserving
 B. must be preserved D. must have preserved

Clues: When we want to express a passive with modal verbs, only be (not 'is, am, was, are') should follow them.

- Can/may/should/could/might + be + V3

Examples

This road must/may/can be used by visitor only

Note: must /may/should/might/can + V3 = wrong

Answer: B

20. Which passive is/are correct?

- A. He was considered a genius by his contemporaries.
 B. Mr. Samson was elected president of the Association.
 C. Dr. Hastings was regarded as an expert in criminal law.
 D. Louis was seen as a sort of clown.
 E. Jimmara was called stupid by the other boys.
 F. All are possible.

Clues: All these are about object complement passive.

21. Lema: Why did you take your car to the garage?
 Birhanu: _____ (see 8.11) Answer: F

- A. To have it serviced.

- B. To having it serviced.
C. To have it service.
D. All are correct.

Clues: Having something done means arranging for somebody else to do something for us.
Examples: We are **having** the house painted at the moment.
Where did you have your hair cut?
I had the roof repaired yesterday.

22. I think you should _____ your hair cut. **Answer: A**
A. get B. have C. had D. A and B

Clues: We can also say 'get something done' instead of 'have something done' (mainly in informal spoken English).
Examples: Where are you going to get/have the roof repaired?
Answer: D

Note: Sometimes 'have something done' has different meaning.
Examples: Two friends had their money stolen while they were on holiday. (Of course this doesn't mean that they arranged for somebody to steal their money. It rather means all their money was stolen from them.)

- With this meaning, we use 'have something done' to say that something happens to somebody or to their belongingness.

23. The soldier had his nose broken in a fight.
This means:-
A. He arranged for the enemy to broke his nose.
B. His nose broken in a fight.
C. He faced breach to his nose in a fight.
D. B and C

(This is about what happened to the soldier) **Answer: D**

24. Have you ever had your passport _____?
A. to be stolen C. being stolen
B. stolen D. was stolen

Clues: Be careful with word order in such cases.
(has/have/had + object + past participle-v3)

We never use the verb 'be' (is/are/was/were) after object.

Don't say: I had my briefcase was stolen yesterday.
Say: I had my briefcase stolen yesterday.
(= This happened to me.)

Getu works very hard. _____ 16 hours a day.

25. A. It is said to work
B. He is said that he works
C. He said that he works
D. A and B

Answer: B

Clues: We use it is said, someone is said, it is reported, the boy is believed, it is expected, etc. to report or to say what people believe/say about something / somebody. To do so, we use a passive form as the above.

Example: Ato Mesay is very old. Nobody knows how old he is, but:
It is said that he is 100 years old. or
He is said to be 100 year old.

Both sentences mean: people say that he is 100 years old.

Answer: D

26. Which is correct?
A. Two people are reported to have been injured in the explosion.
B. It is reported that two people were injured in the explosion.
C. Both.

Clues: These structures are often used in news reports.
The difference is in structure:

27. He has given the keys to his sister.

Passive:

- A. The keys have been given to her.
B. His sister has been given the keys.
C. The keys were given to her.
D. A and B

Answer: D (see Q2)

28. The company lent you a laptop last week.

Passive:

- A. You were lent a laptop last week.
B. A laptop was lent to you last week.
C. Both are possible.

Answer: C

Note: Where there are two objects (direct & indirect) in active sentence, there also be the same in the passive voice.

29. Ten city buses _____ in the garage this week. They will be in service by next week.

- A. are being repaired
B. were repairing

- C. have repaired
D. were repaired

Clues: We use **is/am/are + being + v₃** to introduce present continuous passive.

30. The cat loves being _____

- A. played around
B. played with

- C. played at
D. played about

Clues: In passive structures, verb + preposition groups stay together.

Examples: Active: The doctor operated on her yesterday morning.
Passive: She was operated on yesterday morning.
(- Played takes 'with')

31. It is not really our house yet. It _____

- A. haven't been paid for.
B. hasn't been paid in.
C. hasn't been paid for.
D. wasn't paid for.

Clues: Due to the adverb 'yet' we use present perfect.
The correct past participle form of pay is paid.
Paid take a preposition 'for'.

32. _____ was the Cathedral built _____?

- A. why --- for
B. who --- by
C. what --- for
D. how --- by

Clues: To ask who did something in passive questions, we usually prefer who --- by ?, especially in spoken English.

Examples: Who were you invited by?

Who was the Taj Mahal built by?

Who was television invited by?

Note: 'by whom --- ?' is also possible, especially in writing.

33. Which game _____ with a club?

- A. is not found
B. was played
C. is being played
D. has been played

Clues: Is about simple present passive (is + v₃)

34. If you _____, you lose your job.

- A. were fired
B. do fired
C. are being fired
D. are fired

* Fired =suspended

35. Which animals _____ in Africa, elephants or jaguars?

- A. is not found
B. are not fended

- C. don't found
D. aren't found

Clues: 'animals' is a plural noun, so it requires a plural verb
(are/ aren't) 'Find' has past participle 'found' (not: finded)
since the animals 'jaguars' don't exist in Africa, we use the
negative verb form (in passive)
Passive: Jimma **is found** in Oromia.

Answer: D

36. We should put this in the fridge.

- Passive: A. Fridge should be put in this.
B. This should be put in this.
C. Both.

Answer: B

37. Which is **correct passive**?

- A. I was sent noting.
B. Noting was sent tome.
C. This should be kept cool.
D. All.

Clues: Choice A&B are about the sentence with two objects.

Answer: D

38. Are they helping you?

- Passive: A. Are you helped by them?
B. Are they being helped?
C. Are you being helped by them?
D. Do you helped by them?

Clues: In passive question, the verb to be must be used first
followed by **subject** and **verb participles**.

Answer: C

39. What do people say about it?

- Passive: A. What is said about it?
B. What are people said about it?
C. Both.

Clues: WH-word in active is also used in passive followed by the
possible 'Be' (is/am/are/were).

Answer: A

40. Complete the work.

- Passive: A. The work is completed by you.
B. What are people said about it?
C. Let the work be completed.
D. Let you complete the work.

Clues: Imperative sentence can be turned into passive voice by
using 'let'
Let + obj + be + v₃

* Help the poor. = Let the poor be helped.

Answer: C

- Give me the pen. = Let the pen be given to me.
 41. Your skin feels smooth.
 ✓ Is the same as:

- A. Your skin is smooth when it feels.
 B. Your skin is smooth when it is felt.
 C. Both.
 (see 8.14) Answer: C

42. I don't like _____ by anyone.
 A. criticized C. being criticized
 B. criticizing D. having criticized

Clues: passive can have a gerund form.

Examples: I don't mind being photographed.

43. I want _____ the truth.
 A. to be told C. being told
 B. to being told D. told

Clues: infinitive can have a passive form.

45. Not all the seats in the exam hall _____ taken yet.
 (EUEE 2007)
 A. has B. are C. were D. have

Clue: 'all the seats' = plural subject. The sentence is about past, so plural verb 'were' should be used.

Review exercises

I. Choose the correct answer

- Naol has his luggage _____ in customs.
 A. searching C. searched
 B. being searched D. searches
- Do you get your heating _____ every year?
 A. checked C. checks
 B. checking D. be checked
- Our neighbors are having a new garage _____.
 A. built C. being built
 B. building D. builds
- Rahe! doesn't have her suits _____ at fast clean.
 A. cleaned C. be cleaned
 B. cleaning D. cleans
- Where did you get your bicycle _____, Mamush?
 A. repairing C. being repaired
 B. repairs D. repaired

- You have had your hair _____ you looks nice.
 A. cutting B. cut C. cuts D. was cut

- United were _____ to win.
 A. expecting C. expected
 B. expect D. being expecting

- I may watch film. It is _____ very good.
 A. supposed to be C. supposing
 B. suppose to be D. as supposed to be

- This foot path _____ all the time.
 A. are used C. was used
 B. is used D. were used

- They clean the street every day.
 Passive: A. The street is cleand everyday.
 B. The street is being cleaned every day.
 C. Every day is cleaned street.

- The bread _____ next morning.
 A. was baked C. will baked
 B. is being baked D. will be baked

- If we are going to the theatre, I had better _____.
 A. got changed C. to be get changed
 B. get changed D. be changed

- They are repairing the car.

✓ Passive:

- A. They are being the car.
 B. The car is being repaired by them.
 C. The car is repairing by them.

- They have sent him scholarship.

✓ Passive: A. He has been sent scholarship.
 B. He was sent scholarship.

C. Both.

- Petrol _____ from oil in a refinery.
 A. is making C. was made
 B. made D. is made

- Rice _____ in China.
 A. is grown C. was grown
 B. is grow D. can be grown

- Getnet _____ to hospital last night.
 A. taken C. was taken
 B. has taken D. took

18. Basketball ----- for the first time in December 1991.
A. is played C. was played
19. The oil ----- to produce petrol vapour, and the petrol vapour
condenses to give petrol.
A. is heated C. is being heated
B. was heated D. was heating
20. Customers ----- that goods will not be exchanged
without a valid receipt.
A. are reminding C. was reminding
B. reminding D. are reminding
21. She ----- the finest actress in the world.
A. is thought to be C. has been
B. can be D. all
22. Alcohol ----- without a license.
A. can't sell C. can't sold
B. can sold D. can't be sold
23. When tomatoes were first introduced into Europe from Peru,
they ----- 'love apples'.
A. are called C. was called
B. were called D. has been called

**II. Not all active sentences with object can be passivised
(say right or wrong)**

24. She lacks confidence. _____
25. Confidence is lacked by her. _____
26. The baby resembles the father. _____
27. The father is resembled by the baby. _____
28. This dress doesn't fit you. _____
29. You are not fitted by this dress. _____
30. He has a pretty wife. _____
31. A pretty wife is had by him. _____

**III. Sentences with reflexive, reciprocal or possessive
pronouns as object can't be passivised
(say possible or impossible)**

32. The Queen could see herself in the mirror. _____
33. Herself could be seen in the mirror. _____
34. They held each other tightly. _____
35. Each other were held tightly. _____

26. The bald doctor shook his head. _____
27. His head was shaken by the bald doctor. _____
- IV. Change the structures**

28. Nothing was sent. _____
29. Papers were brought to sign. _____
30. A clock was given to Ermias when he retired. _____
31. The stories were read to the children. _____
32. £5,000 is owed to me. _____
33. A new job has been offered to me. _____
34. French is thought to us by Mrs. Lee. _____
35. A car has been lent to me for the week. _____
36. A full explanation was promised to us. _____
37. A lot of lies were told to me by the secretary. _____
38. Presents are often sent to me by my children. _____

V. Write sentences using 'want' with passive infinitive.

39. Invite me; He _____
40. Remember me; He _____
41. 'Respect me; 'He _____
42. 'Elect us; 'They _____
43. 'please look at me ! 'She _____
44. 'Don't talk about me' _____
45. 'Don't pay me; 'She _____

**VI. Write sentences using 'modal verbs' with 'passive
infinitives' (without 'to')**

46. We mustn't forget them. _____
47. We should put this in the fridge. _____
48. You can't criticize her. _____
49. You mustn't fold this. _____
50. You should keep this cool. _____
51. We ought to tell Hana. _____
52. They may invite him. _____
53. You can't send this immediately. _____
54. You should open this immediately. _____
55. You mustn't open this before Christmas. _____

Suggested Answer

I. 1. C	2. A	3. A	4. A	5. D
6. B	7. C	8. A	9. B	10. A
11. D	12. B	13. B	14. A	15. D
16. A	17. C	18. C	19. A	20. D
21. A	22. D	23. B		

- II. 24. Possible
25. impossible
26. possible
27. impossible
28. Possible
29. impossible
30. possible
31. impossible

- III. 32. Possible
33. impossible
34. possible
35. impossible
36. Possible
37. impossible

- IV. 38. I was sent noting.
39. We were brought papers to sign.
40. Ermas was given a clock when he retired.
41. The children were read the stories.
42. I was owed £5,00.
43. I have been offered a new job.
44. We are thought French by Mrs. Lee.
45. I have been lent a car for the week.
46. We were promised a full explanation.
47. I was told a lot of lies by the secretary.
48. I am often sent presents by my.

- V. 49. He wants to be invited.
50. He wants to be remembered.
51. He wants to be respected.
52. They want to be elected.
53. She wants to be looked at.
54. He doesn't want to be talked about.
55. She doesn't want to be paid.

- VI. 56. They mustn't be forgotten.
57. This should be put in the fridge.
58. She can't be criticized.
59. This mustn't be folded.
60. This should be kept cool.
61. Hana ought to be told.
62. He may be invited.
63. This can't be sent through the post.
64. This should be opened immediately.
65. This mustn't be opened before Christmas.

11. INTRODUCTION

What is **tense**? It comes from latin word '**Tempus**' which means **time**.

So **tense** means the time of a verb.

In grammar, **tense** indicates of the action or state expressed by the verb.

It's a form of by a verb that is used to show when an action happens, will happen, or happened.

It's a distinction of form in a verb to express distinction of time or duration of the action or state it denotes.

The most common tenses in English are:

- present tense
- past tense
- future tense

The **tense** used to express habits, general truths, repeated actions is known as **present tense**.

- Birtukan **enjoys** singing (= habit)
- She **takes** two cups of tea every morning (= repeated)
- The sun **is** the biggest star. (= truth)

The **tense** used to talk about a completed action in a time before now is called **past tense**.

- He father **died** two years ago.
- I **played** the piano when I was a child.

The **tense** used to express an action that will occur in the future is said to be **future tense**.

- She **will come** here tomorrow.
- The race **is going to** take place next day.

After all, every tense is subdivided into three sections:

- Simple/indefinite tense
- Continuous tense
- perfect tense

Simple Tense

11.1 Simple present/present tense

As mentioned in an introduction part, present tense is what you are currently doing, or about the action which happens on regular basis.

Positive Structure = subject + verb present form (+ object)

- He lives in Kenya.
- They play football.

Negative Structure = subject + verb + not (+object)

- Goats don't like rain.
- She doesn't know me.

Note: • Here, helping verb + not + main verb is used (don't like and doesn't know)

• Use a singular verb with third person singular, and plural verb with plural person (subject)

Interrogative form = Helping verb + subject + 1st form of a verb (do/does/is/am/are)

- Do you have an extra pen?
- Does she love you heartedly?
- Are you happy about your results?

Note: Use the infinitive of a verb after do and does in questions and negative sentence (=This is functional in all kinds of persons-1st person, 2nd person and 3rd person)

USES

- A. To talk about general statement fact: (universal truth)
 - The earth is a sphere
 - Water freezes at zero degree
 - The sun rises in the east and sets in the west.
- B. To talk about a habitual activity:
 - He smokes after breakfast.
 - A dog barks at strange things.
 - They drink coffee at lunch.
- C. To talk about daily routines / repeated action (something that often happens)

With key words such as often, always, usually, sometimes, never, occasionally, etc.

- I always skip breakfast.
- She usually gets up at 12 o'clock.
- He doesn't come very often.
- She downloads a vital app everyday.
- She sometimes goes out at night.
- I learn English five days a week.

D. To give instruction / direction

- You walk for a hundred meters, then you, turn left. (= walk for a mile, then turn left)
- Change your clothes and wear a ribbon in your hair.
- Maintain a medium flow of water to prevent wastage.
- Open the packet and pour the contents into hot water.
- You take the No.6 bus to 'Kera' and then No.10 to 'Kotebe'

E. For fixed arrangements / schedules (present, or future).

Key terms: (tomorrow, next week, the coming day, etc.)

- Our exam starts at 3:30.
- The meeting ends \ begins tomorrow.
- My mother arrives tomorrow.
- Our holiday starts on 26th March.
- The library is open at 2 o'clock.

Note: In spite of the simple present verbs (starts, ends, begins, arrives) the thoughts (idea) is about future.

F. With future constructions

→ Here, it expresses future time after some conjunctions: (after, when, before, as soon, until)

- I'll give you when you come next Saturday.
- You'll see her before she leaves.
- I'll wait for her until the next train comes.
- As soon as I get home, I'll something to eat.

11.2 Simple past tense

Indicates that an action or activity began and completed at a particular time in the past (before now).

Duration is not important. The time of the action can be in the recent past or the distant past.

- She went to college last year. (recent)

- Columbus discovered America in 1419. (distant)

Structure in Past Tense

Positive Structure } = Subject + verb + ed (v₂) or irregular form

(A verb may be regular or irregular.)

- He **lived** in America five year ago. (regular v)
- He **came** from America last year (irregular v)
- I **was** very happy about my results.

Negative Structure } = Subject + did + not + simple/base verb

- I **didn't** go out as I was sick.
- She **didn't** do her homework.
- They **weren't** here for a week.

Interrogative Structure } = Did + sub + base form (v₁)

- **Did** you hear the news?
- **Did** she make some tea?
- **Were** they from Italy?

USES

A. To express / say **when** something happened;

- Here, it can associated with certain past time expressions.

❖ **frequency** (often, something, always, usually)

- They **sometimes** went out at night.
- She **often** came with me.
- I **always** wrote her at University.

❖ **a definite point in time** (last week, yesterday, two years ago, an hour ago, a long time ago, when I was a child)

- I met her at the party yesterday.
- We went to Bole Airport a month ago.
- I played jumping rap when I was a child.
- They took an exam last week.

❖ **action happened immediately one after the other**

- First I **paid** the drivers, then I **got** out of the taxi.

❖ **In conditional type two:**

- If I **had** a lot of money, I'd buy an iPhone.

- I would sleep in time if I **finished** my homework.

❖ **In series of completed action** (in the past)

- I **got** up, **had** breakfast and then **went** to school.

Essential information: The word 'ago' is a useful way of expressing the distance into the past. It is placed after the period of time; a week ago, three years ago, a minute ago, an hour ago... (and 'ago' is written as one word, not written as 'a go')
Be careful with the simple past tense of to be, to have, to do

	Verb to be present	Verb to be past	Verb to do present	Verb to do past	Verb to have present	Verb to have past
singular	is	was	does	did	has	had
plural	are	were	do	did	have	had

Note: For the negative and interrogative form of all verbs in the simple past, always use the auxiliary 'did'

- I **didn't** have a bicycle when I was young. (better than saying I hadn't a bicycle...)
- **Did** you have a bicycle when you were young?
- We **didn't** have time to visit my sick Mama.
- We **didn't** do our exercises this morning.
- **Did** you do much exercises to keep your body fit?

'Used to'

We **used to** for something that happened regularly in the past but no longer happens. (= refers only to the past habit that we no more / longer have)

- My friend **used to** smoke a packet a day, but he stopped two years ago. (= now he is not a smoker, he doesn't smoke any more)
- Mr. Tesfaye **used to** travel a lot for visit, but now he doesn't.
- He **used to** drive to work but now he takes a bus.

We also use it for something that was true but no longer is.

- There **used to be** burglars in the village but now there aren't.
- She **used to** have really long hair but she has had it all cut off.

Note: The negative form of **used to** is 'didn't use to'
 ➤ They **didn't use to** go out a lot, but now they do.

❖ **Used to, be used to and get used to doing**

Used to + base verb / be used to + v-ing / get used to + v-ing
 'used to do' is different from 'be used to doing' and 'get used to doing'

→ **be used to doing**: is used to say that something is normal, not usual.

➤ He is **used to driving** in a big city.
 (It's not new for him)

➤ I'm **used to reading** one book a day. I've done it for quite a long time. (=It's a normal habit for me)

→ **get used to doing** = to talk about the process of something becoming normal for us.

➤ I hated jogging at first, but I eventually got used to it.

→ **used to / would / simple past**

We can refer to past habit the following ways:

➤ When he **worked** on a farm, he always **used to** get up at 11 p.m. (**used to**)

➤ When he **worked** on a farm, he **would** always get up at 11 p.m. (**would**)

➤ When he **worked** on a farm, he always got up at 11 p.m. (**simple past**)

Note: 'Would' can be used in place of 'used to', but like the simple past, it always requires a time reference. If we use past tense instead of used to, we need a time reference, too.

➤ Mihiret **was** a waiter years ago, but now she is a hairdresser.

11.3 Simple future

The simple future tense (**will do**) is used mainly to show that an action (or some actions) will take place in the future. It's often called **will**, because we make the simple future tense with the modal auxiliary **will**.

Form: will + infinitive (v₁)

Affirmative structure

sub + will + base verb

Example

➤ I **will open** the window.

➤ She **will finish** before me.

Note: The contracted form of sub + will is (I'll, she'll, you'll, it'll...)

Negative structure

sub + will + base form of a verb (v₁)

Example

➤ She **will not come** soon.

➤ The **will not go** there.

Note: The short form of **will not** is **won't**.

Interrogative structure

Will + sub + simple verb (v₁)

Example

➤ **Will he ask** a question?

➤ **Will they do** business?

Interrogative negative

Will + sub + not + main verb (v₁)

➤ **Will she go not** with you?

❖ **Signal / key words for simple future:**

in a year

after lunch

tomorrow

tonight

next week

tomorrow morning

next month

❖ **assumption:** I think..., probably, perhaps

❖ **with verbs like:** think, believe, accept, hope, etc.

Uses

The simple future is used:

To predict a future event:

➤ It **will rain** tomorrow.

➤ I **don't know** if I **shall see** you next week.

➤ Will house rise again next year?

➤ Ronaldo **will win** on Saturday.

To promise, request, offer, suggestion, threat

(This is sometimes called 'the pure future')

➤ I **will buy** you a bicycle for your birthday

(= **promise**)

➤ Will you **hold** the door open for me please?

(= **request**)

➤ Shall I **get** you a cup of tea? (= **offer**)

- Shall we go for a swim tomorrow?
(= suggestion)
- Just wait!- You will regret this! (threat)
- I'll do the washing up. (= willingness)

To express hopes and expectation

The future is often used after verbs and verb phrases like *assume, be sure, believe, doubt, expect, suppose, think*

- We hope she will get the job she's applied for.
- I'm sure that she'll win the race.

The present with a future reference is possible after *hope*:

- I hope she gets the job she's applied for.
- I hope he is on time.
- I hope won't be late.

Lack of certainty, etc. can be conveyed by using *will* with adverbs like *perhaps, possibly, probably, surely*.

- Ask him again. Perhaps he'll change his mind with the pronoun 'you' to give orders.
- You will do exactly as I say.

With the pronoun 'I' in the interrogative form using 'shall', to ask for advice or instructions:

❖ Other ways of expressing of the future

We can express the future in other ways, a part from *will / shall*. And these ways of expressing the future are concerned less with simple prediction and more with intention, plans and arrangements.

be going to: I'm going to see her tomorrow. (arrangement)

I'm going to practice the piano for two hours this evenings (plan)

They're going to be married next May (intention)

be to: I'm to see her tomorrow.

be + v-ing (present progressive)

I'm seeing her tomorrow.

I'm meeting my doctor tonight.

We're spending next summer in Adama.

simple present: I see/ meet her tomorrow.

The concert begins at 1:30 and ends at 3:30.

The guests leave tomorrow at 11:15.

Note: We also use 'be going to' to refer the immediate future.

Here, the speaker sees signs of something that is about to happen, or may prior knowledge of something which will happen in the near future.

The couples are going to be married soon.

(= her brother told me)

Oh, look! It is going to rain!

(= because of heavy clouds)

Look out! The ladder is broken. She is going to fall off.

Alem has got 100 mark in all subject.

She is going to be awarded.

Illustrative Examples

1. Identify a sentence containing a wrong tense.
A. All my friends wanted coffee, so I made them some.
B. If all goes well, she should be here before it'll get dark.
C. What is it actually like to wake up one day with more money than you can imagine.
D. She played tennis two weeks ago.

Clue: Use a verb in present tense, not future (will) after words and phrases like *after, before, as soon as, still*.

So in choice 'B', it should be "... before it gets dark."

The quantifiers 'all' refers to situation, not people, so a singular verb 'goes' is used with it. **Answer: B**

2. They were all having lunch _____. It was a bad time.

- A. when you will come
- B. when you come
- C. when you came
- D. while you were coming

Clue: As you can see, there are two actions in this questions:

Past continuous and past simple. (where having and the second tense should be in past tense-when you came)

➤ I was sitting on the sun when I heard a child's cry.

Answer: C

3. Kebede and Yeshe are looking for a house to buy.

I think they, _____ soon.

- A. marry
- B. are getting married
- C. may be marrying
- D. will marry

Clue: Use the present progressive form to show the arrangements in the near future. **Answer: B**

4. Did you know that Mary and Bedlu _____ married next week.

- A. are going to get
- B. will be getting
- C. will get
- D. get

Clue: → Something that has already been planned.

5. Listen to this great piece of music. You _____ it. **See (Q3) Answer: A**
 A. enjoy C. are enjoying
 B. will enjoy D. are going to enjoy

Clue: We use 'will' when we talk about a sudden decision, an action which is not planned.

➤ The door gate is being knocked. I'll open it (Not 'I'm going to open it'). Because the opening of the door gate has not been in the speaker's mind before the time of speaking.

6. If you are going to join us, we _____ for you. **Answer: B**
 A. are going to wait C. wait
 B. are waiting D. will wait

7. I completely _____ with you; taxi drivers and waiters shouldn't expect tips. **Answer: D**

A. disagree C. disagreed
 B. have agreement D. have disagreed

Clue: The question is about simple present tense.

Answer: A

8. I'll see you when I _____ back.
 A. get B. will get C. got D. would get

Clue: when/before/after/as soon as/until + sub+ present tense.

→(see Q2) **Answer: A**

9. In which one of the following sentence you are not so certain about the future happening?

A. I hope you'll visit me in my home one day.
 B. I'll possibly come out but I may not get back in time.
 C. A think we'll get on well.
 D. All are about uncertainty in the future.

Clue: Use 'will' with expressions such as probably, possibly, I think, I hope, etc. to express uncertainty in the future.

Answer: D

10. Which of the following future prediction based on evidence in the present situation?

A. Look at the queue. We're not going to get in for hours.
 B. The traffic is terrible. We're going to miss our train.

C. Be careful! You are going to spill your coffee.
 D. All are about that.

→ (see the notes) **Answer: D**

11. I _____ come and have lunch with you I must let Hana know.
 Hanna, I _____ have lunch with Bontu.

A. am going to / will C. will / will
 B. will / am going to D. will / may

Clue: At the moment of making a decision, use 'will'.

Once you have made the decision, talk about it using 'be going to' **Answer: C**

12. Three women and one old man _____ in fire last night.
 A. is died B. have died C. had died D. died

Clue: last night → past time reference **Answer: D**

13. He often _____ to the library because he _____ books.
 A. going / loving C. goes / loves
 B. went / loved D. will go / will love

Clue: Use the simple present with the actions which are habitual and repeated. **Answer: C**

14. My mother _____ fast food. She thinks they're bad for her.

A. eats C. doesn't eat
 B. is not eat D. don't eat

Clue: Use 'does + not + v₁' in a negative sentence with singular subject. A cat doesn't like water.

Answer: C

15. I _____ tennis for the first time in 2005.
 A. playing C. had played
 B. was playing D. played

Answer: D

16. Look at the sky. It _____.
 A. is going to rain C. may rain
 B. will rain D. is raining

The first statement gives a strong clue / evidence to what will happen in the very near future (going to)

17. Perhaps we _____ Bishoftu Lakes. **(see Q10) Answer: A**

A. will visit C. are going to visit
 B. are visiting D. visit.

Clue: Use will after perhaps, probably, maybe, etc. for uncertain future happening. **(see Q9) Answer: A**

18. The train _____ at 11:30 p.m.

- A. is leaving
B. leaves
C. will leave
D. will be leaving

Clue: to express about official

Example: Use simple present for (travel) schedule)

19. The boat is full of water, so it _____

- A. will sink
B. sinks
C. is going to
D. is sinking

20. Yesterday, I _____ to music.

- A. don't listen
B. haven't listened
C. didn't listen
D. didn't listened

Clue: **didn't + base verb** in a negative sentence with past simple
(did / didn't + v_2 is a wrong usage)

21. Which of the following sentence express a regular past habit?

- A. Her daughter **used to cry** everyday after school.
B. She went to church before school.
C. Yesterday at this time we were playing football.
D. The dog didn't its breakfast.

Clue: We use **used to + verb (v_1)** in the place of simple past tense to express actions which were habits or a continuing state of things in the past.

➤ My sister **used to sing** in the bathroom while going!
But no longer she does now)

Note: 'Used to' never be the simple present form like 'use to'

22. '_____' is used when we decide to do something at the moment of speaking.

- A. Be going to B. Will C. Be going D. May

Example: We are really lost.

We will stop and ask someone the way.

→ (see Q11) Answer: B

23. Which sentence has the meaning "That's my intention, what I have planned / arranged to do in the future"?

- A. I'll give you some help if you want.
B. I'm meeting my friend to night.

C. I'm going to learn spoken English when I finish grade 11
D. I hope my results will be nice.

Clue: "I'm going to learn..." I have a plan / decided to do that

Answer: C

24. Identify the sentence with future prediction.

- A. Global warming will have many serious impacts.
B. Our test will be on 15th June.
C. I'll see you tomorrow, bye.
D. The phone is ringing. I'll answer it.

Clue: Choice 'A' is more likely to be prediction.

(what we think or believe will happen-in the future)

Answer: A

25. Which of the following tense is different from the others?

- A. I hope I will do it in a faster time next year.
B. There is someone knocking the door. I'll open it.
C. The president is leaving for China at 3:00 p.m.
D. She always goes to office 2:30 a.m.

The former three options are talking about future tense in different ways.

Answer: D

26. Which of the following usage is not correct?

- A. Drought used to be a common cause of poverty.
B. Did you use to drink a lot of milk when you were a child?
C. She often uses to drink a lot of milk.
D. I didn't use to drink a lot of milk when I was a child.

Clue: Use **used to** (positive), **didn't use to** (negative) and **did you use to** (interrogative) to talk about states or situations, 'used to' doesn't have any simple form in simple present tense as (use to)

Answer: C

Note: (Compare **used to** with **would**): **Would** is not usually used in questions and negative although **used to** talk about the past action (see the notes)

27. Which of the following sentence uses the correct usage?

- A. She will sweeps the floor this afternoon
B. Does she often sweeps the floor?
C. The dog didn't ate its breakfast.
D. Do you like to participate in music competition?

Clue: → All types of persons + will / shall + v_1 (Affirmative)
→ Do / does + sub + v_1 (without -s/es/ies) (question)
→ subject + did + not + v_1 (not v_2)-negative past

28. Meseret _____ her hand when he was cooking the dinner.
A. burning B. burns C. burnt D. was burning
Answer: D
29. I don't understand this sentence. What _____?
A. does this word mean C. means this word
B. does mean this word D. does this mean word
Clue: In 'WH' questions, the right order is: WH + sub main verb
helping + verb.
Answer: C
30. It was a boring day. I _____ anything.
A. don't do C. haven't done
B. wasn't do D. didn't do
Answer: A

11.4 Present progressive tense

Present continuous is a tense to describe action in progress at the present time.

The present progressive form of the verb is used for the moment of communication.

Common time markers often used with the moment of communication includes the following:

- now	- at this moment
- right now	- just now
- at the moment	- at the very moment
- verbs: look! listen!	

Structures

The present progressive is formed with present form of to be verb and -ing form of the main verb.

singular sub + is + v + -ing	→ sub + is/am/are + v-ing
first person singular am + v-ing	
plural sub + are + v-ing	

Look at! What is happening 'at this moment' in the class room?

The teacher **is talking** about verbs.

The teacher **is also explaining** "the moment of communication".

The students in the classroom **are reading** the textbook.

Some birds in the trees **are singing**.

Some cars on the street **are occasionally honking**.

Forms:

Affirmative

First person + is + v + -ing

(It / he / she)

➤ It / He / She **is walking** so slowly.

First person singular + am + v + -ing

(I)

➤ I **am walking** so slowly.

Plural persons + are + v-ing

➤ You / They / we **are walking** slowly.

Negative

Singular persons + is / am + not + v-ing

➤ It / she / he **is not eating** now.

➤ I **am not eating** now.

Plural person + are + not + v-ing

➤ We / you / They **are not eating** breakfasts now.

Interrogative

Is / am + singular subject + v + -ing

➤ Is it / she / he **eating** breakfast now?

➤ Am I **eating** breakfast now?

Are + plural person + v + -ing

➤ Are you / they **eating** breakfast now?

Negative interrogative

Is

Am

Are

+ sub + not + v -ing

➤ Is she **not going** there?

➤ Are you **not going** there?

➤ Are they **not going** there?

Note1: The contracted form of verbs in positive and negative are:
(I'm, we're, it's, he's, she's, they're, you're, I amn't, you aren't, he isn't, etc.)

Note2: The contractions are common with the verb to be

Uses

- A. For actions or events taking place / happening at the time of speaking. (the action is incomplete/in the middle in this case)
- Selam **is watching** a show on television.
 - Robel **is doing** his homework now.
 - The students **are playing** volleyball.

- We **aren't reading** in the library.
- Is your mother **cooking** right now?
- Look! The train **is coming**.

B. For temporary habit

The present progressive often expresses a temporary habit. However, the action is not necessarily happening at the moment of communication / speaking. Common time makers used are:

*for now, to day, this summer
these days, now days, this week*

- This week I'm **talking** an antibiotic for a minor infection.
- Are you **studying** a maths course this semester?
- She **is living** in Addis Ababa for a few days.
- Now days I'm **learning** to drive and Dad is writing a book.

C. For an annoyed and repeated actions

(Here use an adverb of frequency - 'always')

- Feben **is always coming** late.
- It **is always raining** in Nekemet.
- I hate Haile; he **is always complaining**.

D. For a planned, or intended future event/ activity

(with time indicators: **tonight, tomorrow, next week, etc.**)

- Kasahun **is leaving** for his vacation next week.
- We **are meeting** the guest at the airport tomorrow.

E. For longer actions in progress now

- She **is talking** driving lessons.
- They **are preparing** for their exams.
- I'm **writing** a book.

Restrictions on the progressive tense

Stative and dynamic meaning of verbs

How does the following sentence sound to you?

→ I'm **having** a headache because I'm **owing** three cars and they're all **needing** repairs.

essential information: The present continuous tense cannot be used above sentence. Why?

English can be divided into two uses- **stative** and **dynamic**.

In the following sentence, the meanings of the verbs express stative usage:

- I **have** a headache.
- I **own** three cars.
- My cars **need** repairs.

So, when a verb expresses a stative rather than dynamic meaning, it isn't used in the progressive tense - it's non-continuous. The word dynamic comes from the Greek word for energy or power. The word dynamite also comes from this Greek root, clearly showing its root meaning of energy.

In the following sentences, the meanings of the verbs express dynamic usage:

- I'm **getting** a headache.
- I'm **selling** one of my three cars.
- My mechanic **is fixing** the other two cars.

Note: get, sell and fix are all dynamic verbs.

1. Mental state verbs like **understand, know, remember, forget, imagine, mean, recognize, notice** are non progressive verbs

- She **is knowing** many songs. (wrong)
- She **knows** many songs. (right)
- I **am remembering** her name. (wrong)
- I **remember** her name. (right)

2. Verbs of emotions / desires such as **like, love, fear, dislike, believe, want, hate, hope, mind, wish** to state of mind or feeling- and non continuous.

- I **am believing** his story. (wrong)
- I **believe** his history. (right)
- He **is wanting** to rest. (wrong)
- He **wants** to rest. (right)

3. Verbs of measurement such as **contain, consist of, cost, hold, weigh** are non continuous words.

- The committee **is consisting of** four members. (wrong)
- The committee **consists of** four members. (right)

Others are **look, seem, be, have** (=possess) are non-progressive verbs.

- Marth **is looking/resembling** her father. (wrong)
- Marth **looks/resembles** her father. (right)
- The situation **is seeming to be** the worst. (wrong)
- The situation **seems to be** worst. (right)

5. Exceptions

- Perception verbs (see, hear, feel, taste, smell) are often used with can: I can see... These verbs may be used in the continuous form but with a different meaning.
 - This coat **feels** nice and warm.
(= express your perception of the coat's quality)
 - Abebe **is feeling** much better now.
(meaning: His health is improving)
 - We **have** two dogs and two cats. (=belongingness)
 - We **are having** lunch now. (= we are eating)
 - I **can see** Abebe in the garden (= perception)
 - I'm **seeing** later (= we're planning to meet)
 - I'm **smelling** the flowers. It **smells** sweet.
 - She **is talking** the sweet. It **tastes** delicious.

11.5 Past Progressive Tense

Past continuous tense is about the action/ activity which was in progress or ongoing in the past duration-that something was in the middle of action, not complete, an unfinished.

It consists of a past form of **be** plus the **-ing** form of the verb
was / were + v + -ing

Structures

Affirmative form

Singular person + **was + v-ing**

- I/she/he **was sleeping** this morning.

Plural person + **were + v-ing**

- You /they/ we **were sleeping** this morning.

Negative form

sub + **was + not + -ing**

- I/ she /He **wasn't going** out

Plural person + **were + not + v-ing**

- We /you/ they **weren't going** out

Interrogatives structure

was + it / she / he + v-ing

- **Was** I / it / she / he **working** well?

- **Were** we / you / they **working** well?

Uses

- A. For a past activity in progress when another activity occurred

- At two o'clock last evening, I **was eating** dinner.
(= activity of eating was in progress when 2 o'clock occurred)

B. To describe an unfinished action that was interrupted by another event or action:

- I **was having** a beautiful dream when the alarm clock rang.
(= having beautiful dream **was** interrupted by clock's ringing)

C. Two past activities progress at the same time:

- While I **was answering** the phone, he **was getting** the meal.

D. To express a change of mind:

- I **was going** to spend the day at the museum but I've decided to get my homework done instead.

more examples

- Yesterday at this time we **were watching** a movie.
- Last time at ten o'clock, it **was raining**.
- When the exam time got over, some students **were still writing**
- He **was not studying**; he **was watching** movie.
- It was time to eat but she **was still cooking**.
- They **were waiting** for the bus when the accident happened.
- When the fire started I **was washing** clothes.
- While the teacher **was explaining**, the students **were taking** notes.
- What **was** your family **doing** yesterday when you got home?

Note: state verb, however, can't be used in the progressive form.
(Refer to 11.4)

11.6 Future continuous tense

The future progressive is formed with:

(will / shall + be + v-ing)

- For its forms / structures see the future.

Uses

- A. For actions in progress in the future.

The most common use of the progressive form is to describe actions which will be in progress in the immediate or distant future.

- Hurry up! The guests **will be arriving** at any minute!
 - He **will be looking** for her tomorrow.
 - It is often used for visualizing a future activity already planned.
 - By this time tomorrow, I'll **be reading** in the library.
- B. *For arrangements and plans*
- The future progressive can be used like the present progressive to refer to planned events, particularly in connection with travel.
- We'll **be spending** the summer in Harar.
(= we're spending)
 - Dr. Alex **will be giving** a lecture on Ethiopian History tomorrow morning. (= is giving)
 - Tomorrow between 8:30-10:00, we'll **be taking** mid-test.
(= the action will be ongoing between this time)

Illustrative Examples

1. Identify a wrong tense (usage)

- A. Please keep silent, a baby sleeps.
- B. Every morning, he drinks tea.
- C. I won't sit with Yabsira; she is always talking.
- D. You can turn on the TV; I'm not studying.

Clue: The command sentence "please keep silent" tells someone that something is ongoing / talking place - that is "Aby is sleeping"

Answer: A

Which sentence uses a tense correctly?

- A. I am loving you so much
- B. I am understanding your point now.
- C. I am tasting sweet, it tastes delicious.
- D. I was writing a letter when you called me.
- E. C and D

Clue: Do not use continuous form the verbs which denotes state rather than action.

Example: (In choice 'C' the 1st clause is about action, and the 2nd is state)

Which of the following match is wrong?

Answer: E

- A. sub + is/are + v-ing = future progressive
- B. was/were + sub + v-ing = past progressive
- C. sub + will/shall + be + v-ing = future continuous
- D. sub + was/were + not + v-ing = past on going

Answer: A

2. When you called, I _____ in my office.
- A. worked
 - B. working
 - C. was working
 - D. am working

Clue: The first clause introduces the action happened later or the second clause was going on/ occurring and then the action of calling took place.

(= longer action interrupted by shorter action)

→ (While I was working in my office, you called)

Answer: C

3. Which sentence won't give you sense?

- A. Come to see me in the afternoon. I will be sleeping in the morning.
- B. Don't call me at 4 o'clock. I'll be studying in library
- C. We were watching a terror film when the door opened.
- D. What are you doing I called you yesterday?

Clue: What were you doing when the telephone rang?

Answer: D

4. When I saw Dawit, he _____.

- A. is sleeping
- B. was sleeping
- C. slept
- D. will be sleeping

Answer: B

5. While my brother _____, my grandma _____ some muffins.

- A. was studying / was making
- B. did study / made
- C. studied / was making
- D. studying / making

Clue: When two activities ongoing at the same time in the past, we use the same forms of tense.

The action of studying and making muffins were occurring at the same - that is past progressive tense.

Answer: A

6. Which one of the following sentence talks about the action, at the time of speaking?

- A. Sophia and Ashenafi are meeting their friends tonight
- B. Turn down the radio, I'm studying for the exam

- C. Bontu is an eight months' pregnant, she is going to bring forth a new baby.
 D. She has won some money in lottery. She is going to buy jewelries.

Clue: Use present progressive for actions/activities being done at the moment of communication.
 ➤ Look at the river, it is **flowing** very fast.

9. Which sentence is not correct (=tense)
 A. Look! That man tries to open the door of your car.
 B. Let's stay at home. It's raining.
 C. I'm going to bed now. Goodnight!
 D. I can't understand why he's being so selfish.
 E. Hurry up! Everybody is waiting for you.

Clue: if imperatives such as **look, listen, hurry up** are used in a sentence, they are showing us something in progress (action) → (... is trying to ...) **Answer: A**

10. I've lost my key again. I _____ things.
 A. will lose C. am always losing
 B. am always lost D. was always losing

Answer: C

11. While I was _____ books on the desk, I found a little money
 A. lying B. laying C. lieng D. lieying

Essential information: Lay, lie

Lay: is a transitive verb meaning "to put down" and always take an object. Its principal parts are (lay: laid, laid, laying)
 - I **laid** the pen on the table. (laid = v₂ of lay)
 - They are **laying** the foundation. (laying = v-ing of lay)

Lie: is an intransitive verb meaning "to be" or "to stay at rest" and doesn't take an object. Its principal parts are: (lie: lay, lain, lying)

- The book was **lying** on the table (intransitive)
- I had just **lain** down when the phone rang. (intransitive)

Lie = telling a false statement

Answer: B

12. Which sentence has the progressive meaning?
 A. She is leaving tomorrow.
 B. It is going to rain soon.
 C. The train leaves at 3 a.m.

13. D. I'll be leaving tomorrow.
Clue: 'will be + v-ing' form has future meaning-that the action will be in progress in future time.
Example: This time next, I'll be on holiday. I'll be lying on a beach and swimming in the river.

Answer: D

14. Which of the following sentence has the meaning of: "We had already started before Yonas arrived"?
 A. When Yonas arrived, we were having dinner.
 B. When Yonas comes, we are having dinner.
 C. When Yonas is coming, we were having dinner.
 D. When Yonas was arriving: we had been having dinner

Answer: A

15. At 2 o'clock yesterday morning, we _____ breakfast with some friends.
 A. will be having C. were having
 B. having D. are having

Answer: C

16. Listen! _____ something?
 A. can you hear C. do you hear
 B. are you hearing D. you can hear

Answer: A

Perfect Tense

11.7. Present Perfect Tense

This tense is also called pre-present or before present. It refers to the time from past to present.

Past to present time = An activity or condition that in the past and continues up to the present) so one common use of the present perfect is to express past to present time.

The present perfect consists of **have or has** plus the past participle of the verb. (Present perfect = have/has + past participle (V₃))

Past

X

Present

Example:

We have covered five chapters in this text so far.

You have studied four verb forms in some detail.
She has not finished her homework yet.

Note 1: The auxiliary verb **has** is with the third person singular **I** and **you** and the first person singular **he** and the second person singular **you** and the first person plural **we** and the second person plural **you**, and other plural nouns.
In informal writing, **have** or **has** are often written as contractions with pronouns.

Example:

	Singular	Plural
First person	I've	we've
Second person	you've	you've
Third person	he's she's it's	they've

Note 2: Regular past participles are the same form as the simple past tense of the verb.

Example:

Base Form	Past form	Past participle
add	added	added
change	changed	changed
study	studied	studied

Some irregular verbs have the same irregular form in the simple past tense and the past participle.

Example:

Base Form	Past form	Past participle
find	found	found
buy	bought	bought
make	made	made

Some irregular verbs have three different forms.

Example:

Base Form	Past form	Past participle
go	went	gone
begin	began	begun
shake	shook	shaken

Some verbs have the same forms in all cases.

Example:

Base Form	Past form	Past participle
cut	cut	cut
put	put	put
shut	shut	shut
read	read	read
set	set	set

Uses

A To say **how long** something (action /activity) happened or not happened (with: **for** and **since**)

**Since + the beginning of the period
(or a particular time)**

Example: since 2000/Monday/last week/ 5 O'clock /Christmas/ July/1st semester...

For + the period or duration of time.

Example: for ten minutes/two hours/ along time/ages/five years/ a short time/ and hour.....

Study: We have known each other since 2005.
We haven't met Zinash since Monday.
He has not touched cigarettes for six months now.
They have lived in A.A for a long time.

Note: For, not since, can also be used with past tense.

- Teacher Mulatu taught us English for two year
(But now he doesn't teach us-past action)

B. For an action completed in a recent time in the past at a specific time (with: just and already)

- Just: refers to a short time ago.
Order: sub + have/has + just + V₃

Example: She has just come. (She came a short time ago)

- already: refers to sooner than expected
Order: sub + have/has + already + V₃

Example: I've already visited Bishofu Lakes.
(= before an expected time)

Note: We can use 'yet' with present perfect to show that the speaker is expecting something to happen.

- yet: "until now". And use it only in questions and negative sentences. It often takes the end position in a sentence.

- Has she finished doing her homework yet?
- I've written the letter but I haven't posted it yet.

C. To connect the past with the present.

(With adverbs and adverbial phrases: It's the first time, so far, or never)

- I've planted fifty rose-bushes so far this morning.
- It's the first time I've counted 5000 birr.
- It's the first time he has driven a bicycle.

Adverbs like ever (in questions), and not.....ever/never (in sentences) are commonly (but not exclusively) used with the present perfect

- Ever: "at any time" and used in questions
Order: have/has + sub + ever + V₃

Example:

- A: Have you ever visited the National Museum?
- B: No, not yet. Or No, Never. Or: Never (short).

- C: I've never visited the National Museum.
(= I've never visited the National Museum.)
Never = not ever/at any time

He has never driven a car before.

Before now: Lalise hasn't appeared on TV before now.

D. To express an activity in a time clause to emphasize it has been completed before the main clause action begins:

Example: I'll go to the movies after I've finished all my homework.

E. For repeated action

Example: I've read three books this month.

We've met each other twice this week.

F. For action took place in the past and are referred to for the sake of their importance at the time of speaking
(= the action in the past has a result now)

- I've lost my keys. (My door is lock now)
- Sorry, I've forgotten her name (= I can't remember now)

G. Present perfect with been to and gone to.

has/have gone been to + country/city

The president has gone to China.

(= He/she is in China now)

The president has been to china.

(= He/she isn't there now)

I have been to the shop (= now I have come back)

I have gone to the shop (= I'm still there)

11.8. Present perfect progressive

A situation of an activity that began in the past and continued to the present and is used with words like "since" and "for" "all year" it asks the question, "how long have/has been Doing....?" And get the answer "since morning, all time, for three hours, for a week...."

It consists of the present of have plus been plus the -ing form of the verb. Have/has + been + verb + -ing

- He has been travelling all night.
- The alarm has been ringing for over an hour.

- They have been waiting for a train since 12 o'clock (= still they're waiting for it)

Uses

A. For drawing conclusions

We use the present perfect progressive form to show that we came to a conclusion based on direct or indirect evidence we came to a conclusion based on direct or indirect evidence

- Your eyes are red. You've been crying.
- This room stinks. Someone has been smoking in here.
- The ground is wet. It has been raining much.

B. For an action repeated over a period of time.

- Mosisa is a very good swimmer. He has been swimming since he was five.
- Every morning they meet in the same cafe. They've been going there for years.

C. For an activity that has recently stopped or just stopped. (There is connection with "now".)

- Musa: You're out of breath.
Muktar: Yes. I have been running for an hour.
Belay is very tired. He has been working very hard.
Daniel: Why are your clothes so dirty?
Kasahun: I 'have been working in garage.
Girma's clothes are covered in paint. He has been painting the ceiling.

With "how long" T1: How long have you been teaching in this school
T2: For five years /since 2007.

M1: How long has Aberash been singing in this church?

M2: She has been singing for three years.

11.9. Past Perfect Tense

Past perfect is about activity before then.

Past perfect = pre-past/before past.

The past perfect tense is formed with:

had + past participle (done/seen/waked. etc=V₃)

Note: This structure/form is common for all kinds of persons
(= I/we/you/it/she/he/they had gone out)

Affirmative = sub + had + V₃
- I had done my homework

Negative = sub + had + not + V₃
- I had not done my home work

Interrogative = Had + sub + past participle + ?
- Had I done my homework?

Interrogative = Had + sub + not + V₃ + ?
negative

- Had I not done my homework?

Note: had done is the past perfect form of have/has done – present perfect

Uses

A. To express the fact that one of the two actions was done earlier than the other.

- When I arrived there the concert had already started.
 - By the time she got home, she found that somebody had broken into the flat.
 - When the tanker lorry arrived, many people had gone back to their houses.
1. - **Earlier action**: the concert had already started (p.perf.)
- **later action**: I arrived there (past simple)
 2. - **first action**: somebody had broken into the flat (P. perf)
- **Second action**: she got home. (past tense)
 3. - **Action one**: people had gone back.... (past perfect)
- **Action two**: the tanker lorry arrived (past tense)

Note: The relevance which the earlier action had for later action or situation:

relevance: Tanker lorry couldn't deliver the water to the people who waited.

Important: The earlier occurrence of one of the two actions can also be brought out by the use of the words **before** and **after**.

Example:

- People had gone back to their houses before the tanker lorry arrived.
- I arrived there after the concert had started.

Note: We can use past tense in the place of past perfect.

- The tanker lorry arrived, the people went back to their house. This would mean that the two actions coincided and attention is not drawn to any relationship between the two happenings.

B. To express an action completed at a certain point of time in the past.

- At the age of 25, he had completed his PHD.
- He had completed the paper within half the allotted time.

C. To express an unfulfilled wish referring to the past.

- I didn't start earlier – I wish I had started earlier.

D. As a grammatical change from the simple past tense required in indirect/reported speech.

- She said, "The train arrived late." (Direct)
- She said that the train had arrived late. (Indirect)

Note: Irregular verbs have different forms of past participle (example: lost, choosed, bought, written, said etc)

11.10. Past Perfect Progressive

This tense is used to express an action or happening that had lasted for a period of time, until a point of time in the past.

Structure: Had been + V-ing

- By the time she arrived in Egypt, she had been studying Arabic for a year.
- When I found the street so wet, I naturally supposed it had been raining.

urad gave up smoking year ago. He had been smoking for 10 years. I was very tired when I arrived home because I had been working hard all day.

The team had been playing half an hour when it started to rain.

11.11. Future Perfect Tense

Future perfect = pre-future/future before future. It's concerned with an activity to be completed before another activity in the future.

It's formed with:

Will/shall + have + past participle

- They will have left by the time I arrive.

Note: "will/shall + has + V₁" is never used in this case for it forms (affirmative, negative and interrogative), see simple future – 11.3

Sign/key words and phrases used in future perfect are:

- By next Monday By tomorrow
- By Christmas By the end of this year/semester
- By the time you Before you get back turn back
- Then By this time next week/month..

Using these phrase (time reference), the present perfect tells us that a certain action will be completed by a certain future date. The fact of its completion by a certain time is what interests us, not the time of the action itself it bears the same relation to a future moment as the present perfect bears to the present moment.

- I've watched three of these movies.
(= present perfect: I know about them now)
- I shall have watched five of the movies by the end of the year.
- By next June he'll have written his second fiction.
- Before you go to see them, they'll have left the country.
- When you come back he'll have already bought the House.
- I hope it'll have stopped raining by five o'clock.
- Tomorrow this time, I'll have taken the first two Exams.
- By the end of the year, the moon will have gone round the earth thirteen times.

11.12. Future Progressive Tense

This kind of future tense is very seldom heard.

Structure: **Shall/will have + been + v-ing**

- I started writing this book two months ago. By the end of this week, I'll have written 200 pages. By then, I'll have been writing this book for just over six months.

Illustrative Examples

1. **Officer:** I hear you went to Gambella last year? **There before?**
Boss: Yes, I had been there four years before.

- A. Have you ever been
 B. Were you
 C. Had you ever been
 D. Did you go

Clue: Use the past perfect tense /had + V₃/ to describe an action completed before some special past moment we have in mind.

- He sold his house last summer. He had lived in it for 15 years, ever since his father died.

"Ever" is used either with present or past perfect in interrogative sentence (as: have/had... ever been....?)

2. In which of the following sentence is an action began before now pointed out? **Answer:- C**

- A. They have lived here for the last 10 years.
 B. She has been learning Arabic since March.
 C. I think you're hungry. I'll get you food.
 D. A and B.

Clue: Present perfect and present progressive tenses are used for the action began before now and continue up to the present time (if the effects are noticeable now).

Example: I've just had a bath, and now I'm clean.

3. "Have you finished yet?" What answer will you expect? **Answer:- B**

- A. No, I haven't (yet)
 B. Not yet
 C. Yes, I haven't
 D. A and B are right

4. Let's get going; I have _____ heard such nonsense. **Answer:- D**

- A. ever
 B. forever
 C. never
 D. whenever

Clue: "have/has + never + V₃" is used in affirmative sentence with present perfect (= for negative meaning/idea)

Has she ever eaten fish? She has **never** eaten before.
 (question) (affirmative - negative thought)

Answer:- C

5. In which one of the following sentence is "never" used to express a present perfect?

- A. Never lose hope!
 B. He was never very good at sport.
 C. I promise you. I'll never trouble you again.
 D. Silas is very happy because he has never been to the cinema before.

Clue: Note that never can be used in all kinds of tenses

Answer:- D

6. We studied together at college, but I _____ her ever since.

- A. didn't see
 B. won't have seen
 C. have seen
 D. haven't seen

Clue: Since ever (ከሁሉ ጊዜ ጀምሮ) expresses the starting period of time in the past up to present. It does the work of present perfect continuous tense. (See the notes)

7. I'm really working hard to save money. By September Next year, I _____ my own house and car. **Answer:- D**

- A. will buy
 B. have bought
 C. must buy
 D. will have bought

Clue: Use the future perfect (will/shall have + V₃) to tell that a certain action will already be completed by a certain future time.

- We're late. The film **will already have started** by the time we get to the cinema.

8. I _____ Tom for about ten years now. **Answer:- D**

- A. Know
 B. Knew
 C. have known
 D. have been knowing

Clue: Use 'for' to denote "a length of time till now" - that's to express present perfect.

9. I _____ in that restaurant so many times and their meals are really delicious. Shall we go there? **Answer:- C**

- A. ate
 B. eat
 C. had eaten
 D. have eaten

Frequency words like (often, frequently) and expressions like (three/four/several/many + times) can be used in present perfect to show repeated or habitual actions between past and present time.

- I've watched her on TV many/several times (i.e. and I expect to again)
- She has attended classes regularly. She's always worked hard.

10. Next week this time, I _____ all my examinations.
 A. I'm finishing B. have finished C. will finish D. will have finished

Answer:- D

11. I'm not good at mathematics, but I _____ any problem with My English.
 A. had never have B. have never had C. never have D. had never had

(See Q-7) Answer:- D

12. I was very sad to hear that your mother _____
 A. has died B. had died C. dies D. would die
 Clue: An action that happened before another action in the past is past perfect (had + V₃).

(See Q-4) Answer:- B

Action 1 = your mother had died
 Action 2 = then I was very sad

13. The meeting hadn't begun _____ when we arrived
 A. already B. for C. since D. yet
 Clue: We can use 'yet' with present and past perfect tense to say "till now/that time". Yet can be used in negative and question sentences.

Answer:- B

- Have they finished writing the notes yet?
- They have finished the exercises but they haven't finished the notes yet.

Answer:- D

14. We _____ at the scene when the alarm went off.
 A. have just arrived B. were just arrived C. had just arrived D. arrived
 Clue: What happened before the alarm went off? It's our arrival at the scene, or that we had just arrived at the scene (which happened first=past perfect) (see Q- 12)

Answer:- C

15. Guess how long you _____ at school by the end of this year.

- A. will be
- B. have been

- C. had been
- D. will have been

Future perfect: will/shall have + been (V₃)

(See Q 7 & 10)

Answer:- D

16. Selam _____ the shop. I think she'll be back a few minutes later.
 A. has gone to B. has been to C. went to D. goes to
 Clue: Look at the different between "has/have gone to" and "has/have been to"
 Both expressions are used to show somewhere (place) which someone goes to.

- has gone to:

He has gone to airport = that is where you can find him now - he's now.

- has been to:

He has been to airport = tells us what he did there-he's not there now.

Answer:- A

17. When I saw Melat she was very tired. And I asked her why she was, and she replied that she _____ the exam for three hours.

- A. was doing

- C. had been doing

- B. has been doing

- D. is doing

Clue: If a certain action was in progress/ on going before another action is the past, it's said to be past perfect progressive-had been + v-ing.

18. Erenesh has been writing a letter since you _____

- A. left

- C. had left

- B. will leave

- D. have left

Clue: 'Since', in present perfect, should be followed by simple past expression to indicate when the action started (since + yesterday/ you left /arrived/come/primary school/last year/ last summer/Christmas/2005,etc)

Note: Since you left means = at the point of time you

Answer:- C

19. He has worked here for _____

- A. 2002

- B. along time

- C. ten years

- D. B and C

Clue: 'for' means the length of time up to now.

(read the notes) Answer:- D

Answer:- A

20. Which sentence is meaningless?
- I saw a corocodile yesterday.
 - I have been reading last night.
 - I'll have already finished my work when you come back.
 - I've not been to Gonder since January.

Clue: Time references such as (yesterday/last night.../ago/in 2005...) are used to indicate past action, not present period.

21. **Lulu:** Have you ever read this historical fiction?
Lema: _____. I once read a year ago.
- Yes, I did
 - No, I didn't
 - Yes, I've
 - No, I've not
- "Yes, I have" means "I've read it"

22. Melkam was excited because she _____ to a dance club before.
- has ever been
 - has never been
 - had ever been
 - had never been

Answer: C

Answer: D

(see Q 12 and 14)

Exercises

Multiple choice: Choose the correct answer

- Give me a call _____ back from your trip.
 - while you got
 - when you get
 - while you get
 - when you will get
- Listen to this great piece of music. You _____ it.
 - enjoy
 - will enjoy
 - are enjoying
 - are going to enjoy
- By the year 2020, the cure for both HIV/AIDS and Ebola _____.
 - was discovered
 - will be discovered
 - had been discovered
 - will have been discovered
- Our departure is only a week away, but we haven't got out tickets _____. Isn't that something to worry about?
 - yet
 - still
 - now
 - still now
- In my life, I _____ had money counted in four digits.
 - have never
 - haven't never
 - am never
 - am not have
- Sorry. You can't speak to Mahlet. She _____ a bath.
 - have
 - is having
 - does
 - has
- "I've read that book." Means:

- I have decided to read it. C. I know that it's my book.
 B. I've written it. D. I know what it's all about.
- I can see a man outside; he _____ at me.
 - is going to look
 - will look
 - is looking
 - looks
- I _____ a letter to my friend. I have written three letters since breakfast.
 - am writing
 - am going to write
 - will write
 - write
- I'm sure you _____ a good time staying here with me this coming summer.
 - will have
 - should have
 - have
 - will have having
- Classes begin only after you _____ registration.
 - completed
 - complete
 - will complete
 - had completed
- None of the furniture we bought last week _____ yet.
 - has arrived
 - arrived
 - have arrived
 - will have arrived
- It's hard to imagine what life was like _____ there were no computers or mobile phones.
 - while
 - when
 - where
 - during
- We've just heard that your sister _____ a baby.
 - is going to have
 - must have
 - will have
 - shall have
- I was doing some washing _____ he came. He just said hello and left. That is all I know.
 - while
 - when
 - since
 - during
- I _____ in a small town since I was born and planned to stay there until I was fifty.
 - lived
 - have been living
 - had lived
 - will have lived
- By the end of August, we _____ our placement in universities.
 - will have known
 - will have been known
 - will know
 - will be knowing
- We have known each other _____ childhood.
 - When
 - while
 - since
 - as
- The meeting had not begun _____ when we arrived.
 - already
 - for
 - since
 - yet

20. Has the plane landed _____? People are waiting outside to welcome him.
A. now B. still C. yet D. till now
21. We have lived in this area since childhood but we _____ anything like that before.
A. have never B. haven't never C. have ever D. haven't ever
22. I hope we _____ our tenth round by June. We have already done seven now.
A. have completed B. should complete C. will complete D. will have completed
23. I _____ hard for his exam since September and I think, I did the right thing.
A. had really worked B. have really worked C. really worked D. will have really worked
24. Their house _____ in to last night for the second time.
A. broken B. broken C. was broken D. has been broken
25. The telephone _____. Can you answer it, please?
A. can ring B. is ringing C. rang D. has rung
26. The principal _____ for ten minutes when the power supply went.
A. was speaking B. is speaking C. had spoken D. has been speaking
27. The baby _____ for quiet some time but no one paid any attention.
A. was crying B. is crying C. will be crying D. cried
28. My mother hadn't seen Robera before, so she _____ him.
A. hadn't recognized B. hasn't recognized C. doesn't recognize D. didn't recognize
29. She has bought some provisions and vegetables. She _____ make new dishes for lunch.
A. is going to B. will C. will be D. can
30. Awel: I can't lift this table.
Belay: I _____ and help you.
A. come B. am going to come C. am coming D. will come
31. By the weekend they _____ new roads.
A. will have lied B. will have laid C. will have lain D. will lay

- I _____ eat too much sweet when was a child.
A. used to B. was used to C. did D. would
32. The third plane _____ at 11:30 p.m.
A. will take off B. is taking off C. takes off D. is going to take off
33. The ground feels like muddy because it _____ all night.
A. has been raining B. is raining C. was raining D. had been raining
34. The Prime Minister _____ Minisota for a week. Now he is in Paris.
A. was to B. will be to C. has gone D. has been to

Answer keys

- | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 5. A | 9. A |
| 2. B | 6. B | 10. A |
| 3. D | 7. D | 11. B |
| 4. A | 8. C | 12. A |
| 13. B | 15. B | 17. A |
| 14. A | 16. C | 18. C |
| 19. D | 23. B | 27. A |
| 20. C | 24. C | 28. D |
| 21. A | 25. B | 29. A |
| 22. D | 26. C | |
| 30. D | 32. A | 34. A |
| 31. B | 33. C | 35. D |

12. DIRECT AND REPORTED SPEECHES

Unit - 12

12.1 Direct speech

➤ Showing what someone has said.

➤ **Constructive points in 'Direct speeches.**

1. We use speech marks to show the actual words spoken by someone (=direct speech)
 - Speech marks may be single (".....") or double (".....")
 - Any other punctuation mark should go inside the speech marks.

Examples: "How are you?" he said.
"Get out!" he shouted.

2. When creating a dialogue, we show that two people speaking by putting their words on separate lines. With speech marks, we use the punctuation marks we usually normally use for one sentence or more.

Examples: "I lost my dog."

"Why don't you put an advertisement in the paper?"

"Don't be silly! My dog can't read."

3. **Note**, however, that a full stop becomes a comma if we add a phrase like he said, she told

Examples: "I have lost my dog."

4. If words like he said come before the word in speech marks we punctuate as follows:

Examples: The soldier shouted, "Run for your lives!"

Then he said, "Why don't we try something else?"

5. Now look what happens when a phrase like he said is sandwiched between two pieces of direct speech:

➤ "I've lost my dog. What shall I do?"
(two separate sentences)

➤ **Becomes:**

"I've lost my dog," he said, "What shall I do?"

➤ "I have lost my dog, but I think I know where it is."
(one sentence)

➤ **Becomes:**

"I have lost my dog," he said, "but I think I know where it is."

5. We mark the beginning of direct speech with a capital letter even though the words may be in the middle of a sentence.

Example: He said, "We will see you latter."
Note: In a normal sentence where there are no speech marks, we never use a comma to separate phrases like he said or she said from the words that follows.

Example: He said he would do it later.
She said that she didn't like it.

Illustrative Examples

1. Two of the four sentences below are wrongly punctuated. Which two?

A. He said, "I'm not feeling well."

B. He said, he was not feeling well.

C. She said, "I'm freezing."

D. She said that, she was freezing.

Clue: A and C are correctly punctuated (see the previous notes) In reported speech, no comma needed after introductory phrases like he said/ she asked.

- Abel said, "I will go there tomorrow." (Direct)
Abel said that, he would go there the next day (wrong).

- Abel said (that) he would go there the next day (correct reported). **Answer: B & D**

2. Correct the jokes below. Use capital letters, speech and other punctuation marks where appropriate.

My doctor has advised me to give up golf said Yared why asked his friend did he examine your heart no replied Yared but he had a look at my score card.

Clue: The actual words of the speaker are always in speech marks (quotation marks).

- **Correction:** "My doctor advised me to give up golf," said Yared.

"Why?" asked his friend. "Did he examine your heart?"

"No," replied, "but he had a look at my score card." (!)

Which Direct speech contains a wrong punctuation?

- A. "He said, where is the money?"
- B. Tigist said, "What do I need?"

- "You must fill in these three forms."
→ They told me I must fill in three forms.
 - We often leave out that, especially after common verbs like say and think.
 - Susan said she really liked it there.
 - Indirect questions have a different structure from direct questions.
 - "Where is your luggage?"
→ He asked me where my luggage was.
 - "Do you know Hewan?"
→ She asked me if I knew Hewan.
 - We can use subject + infinitive after some verbs, like ask and tell.
 - I asked him to talk more quietly.
 - We told Mesfin not to lock the garage.
 - And we can use infinitives after most question words.
 - Tell us what to do.
 - I don't know how to switch on this computer.
- Note: Reported speech always ends in "full stop".

Illustrative examples

13. Which do you think is the best explanation for differences?
- A. After verbs like said, you change tenses and pronouns in English.
- B. The time, place and speakers are different.
- C. If the main verb is past, the other verbs have to be past, too.
- (see the beginning /above notes)
14. Look at the text, and write down all words and expressions that are different in Yilma's and Nahom's sentence.
- Yilma (on Saturday evening): "I don't like this party. I want to go."
- Nahome (on Sunday morning): Yilma said that he didn't like the party, and he wanted to go home right away.
- Answer: changes /differences take place in this text are:
- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| In Direct Speech | In Reported Speech |
| I | → he |
| Don't | → didn't |
| This | → the |

Want → wanted
Now → right now

12.3 Changes in reported speech

- 'here' and 'now' words
Some words may be changed in **REPORTED SPEECH** because the original speaker's 'here' and 'now' are not the same as the reporter's.

Illustrative Examples

- Match the Direct and Indirect speech expressions.
- | Direct speech expressions | Reported speech expressions |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 15. here | A. that day |
| 16. now | B. that night |
| 17. this | C. that |
| 18. tomorrow | D. the day before |
| 19. yesterday | E. the next week |
| 20. today | F. the next day |
| 21. tonight | G. there |
| 22. last week | H. the week before |
| 23. next week | I. then |

'Suggested Answer'

- G • I • C • F • D • A • B • H • E • H
- There is often more than one way of reporting 'here' and 'now' words.
- "I don't like this house."
→ She said she didn't like that house/ the house/ their house/ the house she was visiting
24. "I will phone you this evening."
A. She said she would phone me this evenings.
B. She said she would phone me that evening.
C. She said she would phone me next evening.
- Clue: this → that (see the above) Answer: B
25. "I am leaving now."
A. He said he was leaving now.
B. He said he was leaving next.
C. He said he was leaving after.

D. He said he was leaving right away.

Answer: D (See the notes)

26. "I'll see you tomorrow."

- A. I said I would see her the day after.
- B. I said I'd see her the following day.
- C. I said I'd see her the day before.
- D. A and B

Clue: The following day / the day after can replace tomorrow.

27. "She invited me to the party yesterday."

- A. He said she invited him the day before.
- B. He said she invited him the previous day.
- C. Both are possible.

B. Tense changes:

- After reporting expression like he said, I asked, she thought, tenses are usually different from those in the original words (because the reporter's time is different from the original speaker's time verbs become more past).

STUDY THE SUMMARY

ORIGINAL WORDS (DIRECT SPEECH)

REPORTED WORDS (INDIRECT SPEECH)

1. Present to past

- Abebe: "I need rest."
- Thomas: "I am not wasting my time."

Abebe said (that) he needed rest.
Thomas said he wasn't wasting his time.

2. Present perfect to past perfect

- Beniam: "I have had some good news."
- Taye: "I've been sleeping."

Beniam said he had had some good news.
Taye said he had been sleeping.

3. Past to past/past perfect (past perfect is often optional)

- Jalud: "I went home early."

Jalud said he went/had gone home early.
Tsige said she was/had been

361
• Tsige: "I was waiting for you." waiting for me.

• Lema: "I had eaten earlier." Lema said he had eaten earlier.

• Shewa: "I had been waiting for you." Shewa said he'd been waiting for me.

• Modal 'present' to 'conditional' or 'past'

• Betty: "I'll see you later."

Betty said she would see me / us later.

• Sara: "I can speak French."

Sara said she could speak French.

• Botsa: "I may arrive later."

Botsa said he might arrive later.

• 'Shall' with a future reference becomes 'would'

• Roman: "I shall speak to him."

Roman said she would speak to him.

• 'Shall' in offers and suggestions becomes 'should'

• Melkamu: "Shall I speak to him?"

Melkamu asked whether he should speak to him.

• 'Past' or 'conditional' modals don't change

• Teddy: "I could help you."

Teddy said he could help me/us.

• Wonda: "I might see you."

Wonda said he might see me/us.

• Kasahun: "I would enjoy that"

Kasahun said he would enjoy that.

• 'Perfect' modal forms don't change

• Sami: "I must have fainted."

Sami said he must have fainted.

• Gemechu: "I couldn't have said that."

Gemechu said he couldn't have said that.

• Rahel: "I needn't have gone there."

Rahel said she needn't have gone there.

• Tadesse: "I ought to have helped her"

Tadesse said he ought to have helped her.

• 'Should' (=it is advisable) doesn't change

• Meron: "I should go to the dentist"

Meron said she should go to the dentist.

• 'Should' used in place of 'would' in conditionals becomes 'would'

• Genet: "If I were you, I would not get legal advice."

Genet said if she were me, she would get legal advice.

• 'Must' (=necessity in the past) doesn't change, or becomes 'had'

to'

- Eshetu: "I must catch an early bus."

- Getaneh: "I must speak to you."

Eshetu said he must had to catch an early bus.

Getaneh said he must had to speak to me/us.

13. 'Must' (= necessary or possibility) doesn't change, or become 'would have to'

- Sintayehu: "I must leave tomorrow."

Sintayehu said he must/would have to leave tomorrow.

- Nazirawi: "I must work till later."

Nazirawi said he must/would have to work till late.

14. 'Must' (= deduction or possibility) doesn't change

- Reta: "Nega must be a fool."

Reta said Nega must be a fool.

15. 'Mustn't' (= prohibition) doesn't change, or becomes 'couldn't'

- Legesse: "I mustn't eat meat."

Legesse said he mustn't/couldn't eat meat.

- Bekele: "They mustn't give up."

Bekele said they mustn't/couldn't give up.

⇒ 'that' can either be used or dropped in this reported speech.

Extreme points:

- Realize the different between say and tell
 - 'Tell' must have a personal object: We tell somebody something.

Examples: They told me I was wrong (NOT: they told I was wrong.) She told us a joke.

⇒ (me and us in this examples are object after told)

- 'say' doesn't need a personal object: we say something (or somebody)

Examples: They said I was wrong. (NOT: They said me I was wrong) We said nothing to anybody.

- Tense doesn't change after present or future reporting verbs because there is no important change of time.

Examples: Samuel says, "I don't want to play anymore."

→ Samuel (he) says he doesn't want to play anymore."

Martha says, "I'll tell her your idea is great."

→ Martha says (that) she'll tell her my idea is great.

- But: There is a personal pronoun changes in the above cases.

Note-1: Tenses don't usually change after present perfect reporting

163

verbs.

- The government has announced that taxes will be raised.

Note-2: We often drop 'that' after common reporting verbs.

- He said (that) he was falling in love with me.
- I knew (that) he was lying.

Illustrative Examples

25. "When will your sister come?" he asked me.

The reported form of this question is:

- A. He asked me when your sister will come.
- B. He asked me whether when my sister will come.
- C. He asked me when my sister would come.
- D. He asked me if when my sister would come.

Clue: When we report what someone has said after a while, not immediately, time/tense should be changed.

Personal pronouns are common changes in any situations.

- Will becomes would.

- Since the direct speech doesn't I require yes/ no-answer, if whether can't be used.

Answer: C

28. Daughter: "I hope I will pass."

Father: What did she say?

Mother: She said that _____

- A. I hope I will pass.
- B. She hoped she would pass.
- C. She hoped she will pass.
- D. She hopes she would pass.

Clue: Changes in this question may be:

Modal = will becomes 'conditional /past' (would)

Present = hope becomes past (hoped)

I becomes she (daughter)

Answer: B

30. Senait said yesterday, "I am going to town later."

⇒ If reported two days later:

- A. Senait said she was going to town later.
- B. Senait said I was going to town later.
- C. Senait said she is going to town later.

Clue: 'I am going to' becomes 'she was going to'

Answer: A

31. Hirut said, "I like ice-cream."

- A. Hirut says that she likes ice-cream.
 B. Hirut said that she likes ice-cream.
 C. Both are possible.

Clue: We can either change the time or not for things which are always done (true)

32. What is the **Indirect speech** equivalent of this sentence: A. B or both? "If I had any money, I would buy you a drink."

- A. She said if she had any money, she would buy me a drink
 B. She said if she had had any money, she would've bought me a drink.

Clue: Past becomes past perfect or doesn't change.

33. **Direct:** 'It would be nice if I could see you again.' **Reported:** He said it would be nice if he _____ me again.

- A. could see
 B. could have seen
 C. would see

34. Which verb form(s) can complete the sentence correctly?
 He says he _____ to stay very late.

- A. doesn't want
 B. didn't want
 C. hasn't wanted

Clue: 'says' is a present reporting verb, so the tense doesn't change.

35. Which do you think is wrong?
 A. He **said** he **would** write every day, if you could.
 B. He **promised** he **would** write every day, if you could.
 C. He **said** to write every day, if he could.
 D. He **promised** to write every day, if he could.

Clue: We don't use 'to' after 'say'.

36. Which is **correct**?
 A. Sarah **said** that she was coming soon.
 B. Sarah **said** she was coming soon.
 C. both are possible.

Clue: We often drop (that) after common reporting verbs said, knew, told.

(But no changes of meaning)

37. Which word(s) can end the sentence: A, B, or both?

I was talking to Atsede on Saturday. She was a bit upset; She **said** she **had had** an accident.

- A. yesterday
 B. the day before
 C. the next day

Clue: past tense becomes past perfect.
 Time expressions for a past are:
 Yesterday becomes the day before / the previous day
 Last week becomes the week before / the previous week.

38. Which of these words can fill the gap correctly?
 She said she _____ see us later.

- A. may B. might C. will

Clue: This is a reported speech. Its Direct speech is:
 She said, "I may see you later."

'May' becomes 'might'.

Answer: B

39. Choose the **correct reporting verbs** in the (brackets)
 39. I _____ Lema I wanted to go home. (said/told)
 40. I _____ that she would buy the tickets. (said/told)
 41. I didn't _____ anyone that I was leaving. (say/tell)
 42. Why did you _____ you were ill? (say/tell)
 43. My father _____ he needed help. (said/ told)
 44. The patient _____ the doctor he couldn't walk. (said/told)
 45. Everybody _____ I looked happy. (said/told)
 46. Nobody _____ me that there was a strike. (said/told)

Answers: 39. told 41. tell 43. said 45. said
 40. said 42. say 44. told 46. told

(Note: for the differences between say & tell, see extreme points, after Q15)

12.4 Present situations (with reported speech)

(Eg. He **proved** that the earth is /was round)

Situations that **have not changed**:

If the original speaker was talking about **present** or **future** situation that is **still present** or **future** when the words are reported. The tenses are sometimes **not changed** after a past reporting verbs (said, suggested, told.....)

DIRECT SPEECH	REPORTED SPEECH
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 'The earth is round.' 'How old are you?' 'What?' 'Where does he work?' 'It will be windy tomorrow.' 	He <u>proved that</u> the earth <u>was</u> round. I asked how old you <u>were/are</u> . I've often wondered where he <u>worked/works</u> . The forecast said it <u>would/will</u> be windy tomorrow.

Note: We don't keep the original speaker's tense if we don't agree with what he/she said, or if we want to show the ideas don't come from us.

Study:

They were certain that the gods lived in the sky. Did you hear that?
 She said she was fourteen.
 He announced that profits were higher than forecast.
 I didn't now she was ill.

12.5 Reported questions

- Indirect questions normally have the subject before the verb.
- He wanted to know when I could start.
 (NOT: when could I start)
 - I asked where the trainer and the team were staying.

Note-1: 'Do' is not used in indirect questions, and question marks (???) are not used.

Example: I wondered how they felt.

(NOT: How did they feel?)

Note-2: The same structure is used to report the answers to questions

- I knew how they felt.
 - Nobody told me why I had to sign the paper.
 - Yes/no questions are reported with 'if' or 'whether'
- Examples:** The driver asked if/whether I wanted to go to the town centre.

Note-3: We prefer whether before or in a formal style.

Example: I enquired whether she was coming by road or by air.

Note-4: We sometimes make indirect questions in the same way as direct questions in informal speech (but not in 'formal writing')

- He wanted to know when could I start.

Illustrative Examples

47. She said, "What day is it?"
 Imagine this sentence were reported soon after it was said.
- She asked what day it is.
 - She asked what day it was.
 - She asked what day is it?
 - She asked what day was it?
- Clue:** We don't use any question mark in Reported Speech except a full stop.

We don't also use 'that'.

We should use a **pronoun + verb** immediately after **wh - word**

Answer: A

Note: If the above Direct speech was reported after a few days, the tense/time needs to be changed. (She asked what the day it was)

48. "You will get your money."
 If reported after a week:

- She said I will get my money.
- She said I would get my money.
- She said I would have got my money.

Answer: B

49. "Is Berihe coming to us?"

If reported soon:

- I wanted to know if Berihe was coming to us.
- I asked whether Berihe is coming to us.
- I asked that if Berihe is coming to us.
- I asked whether Berihe is coming to us?

Clue: 'that' can't be used in reporting questions.

Answer: B

Note: Whether/if is used in yes/no reporting question (whether is more common than if)

50. Which word(s) can end the sentence **correctly**?

I asked where

- Ali is
- Is Ali
- Ali was
- was Ali

Clue: Let's make direct sentence for this question.

- I said, "Where is Ali?"
- There can be two possible answers (reported) for this.
- Soon/ immediately

- I asked where Ali is (NOT: Where is Ali/..... is Ali?)
 2. After a while (sometimes later)
 • I wanted to know where Ali was (NOT: where was Ali?)
 If it's reporting verb in Direct speech is (said).
 51. Which is correct: A, B, C, or all?
 Didn't you hear me?
 A. I asked you how old you are.
 B. I asked you how old you were.
 C. I asked you how old are you?
 D. A and B
 Clue: If this was reported soon or after a while A and B are possible.
 I said, "How old are you?"
 52. Which verb form(s) can complete the sentence correctly?
 Direct: "What do I need?"
 Reported: She asked what
 A. she needs C. does she need
 B. she needed D. did she need
 Clue: We don't use do/does/did in reported questions.
 Instead, we use a main verb.
 53. Which expression (s) can complete the sentence correctly?
 Direct: "What should I do next?"
 Indirect: He asked me what
 A. he should do next C. he should have done next
 B. to do next
 Clue: The structure question word + infinitive (to) is common.
 • He asked her how to make a white sauce.
 54. Which expression(s) can complete the sentence correctly?
 The driver the town centre.
 A. asked that I wanted
 B. asked if I wanted
 C. asked whether I wanted
 D. said that I wanted
 E. said if I wanted
 F. said whether I wanted
 Clue: To do this question, let's first set the Direct Sentence.
 Direct: The driver said, "Do you want the town centre?"

- And this requires yes/no answer.
 For yes/no question, whether/if is used.
 Answer: B/C
 Which of these sentences are **normal** and **correct**?
 55. The Greeks believed that the sun goes round the earth.
 A. The Greeks believed that the sun went round the earth.
 B. Copernicus proved that the earth goes round the sun.
 C. Copernicus proved that the earth went round the sun.
 D. Answer: B, C and D
 Choose the right words to complete the indirect speech sentence.
 Direct: "Shall I carry that bag?"
 Reported: He wants to know if he carry that bag.
 A. shall B. will C. should D. would
 Clue: Shall → should
 Will → would
 Can → could
 May → might
 Answer: C
 57. Direct: "Shall I be needed tomorrow?"
 Reported: He wants to know if he
 A. shall B. will C. should D. would
 Clue: Due to 'tomorrow', 'will' is needed here.
 • We use 'will' with it/he/she/you/they, and 'shall' with I/ we
 Answer: B

12.6 Infinitives in 'reported speech'

- We use **infinitives** to report sentences about future actions. For example: Promises, agreements, orders, offers, advice, suggestions, requests. ('that', 'whether/if' are not used)

Examples

- 'I'll definitely write' → He promised to write.
 'Ok, I'll wait till 6 o'clock.' → She agreed to wait till 6 o'clock.
 'Do be careful, Iyasu.' → I told Iyasu to be careful.
 'Shall I babysit tonight?' → Melat offered to babysit tonight.
 'You had better think again.' → The manager advised me to think again.
 'Please don't be late' → she asked us not to be late.
 • The structure question word + infinitive is common in

these cases (WH-words: how, when, Where, what)

Example:

I'll let you know **when** to start work.
Don't tell me **what** to do.

Can you show me **where** to park the car?

He asked me **how** to get to the national park.

Note 1: Infinitive are not used after suggest or say

Compare:

He suggested trying somewhere else.

(NOT: he suggested to try....)

The policeman said I mustn't park there.

(NOT: said me not to park)

Note 2: We can use whether but not if before infinitives.

- I don't know whether to go home.

(NOT: if to go home)

12.7 Indirect speech in 'special cases'

(Eg. He said I'd better go)

- Past tenses are changed to past perfect after past reporting verbs, but only if this is necessary in order to make the time relations clear.

Compare:

DIRECT SPEECH	REPORTED SPEECH
• I saw Getachew a couple of days ago.	In his letter, he said he <u>had</u> seen Getachew a couple of days before.
• Dinosaurs were around for 250 million years	This guy on Tv said that dinosaurs were around for 250 million years (NOT: had been around)

- Usually unchanged after past reporting verbs: past perfect, had better, could, would, should, ought to, might, must.

Study:

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
'I <u>hadn't</u> seen him before.'	She said she <u>hadn't</u> seen him before.
'You <u>had better</u> go.'	He said I <u>had better</u> go.
'I <u>couldn't</u> help it.'	I said (that) I <u>couldn't</u> help it.
' <u>Would</u> you like a drink?'	She asked me if I <u>would</u> like a drink.

Illustrative examples

38. "Wait for me," I said to him.
A. I told him to wait for me.
B. I said to him to wait for me.
C. I told him that he wait for me.
D. I told him if he wait me.

Clue: We report the imperative (command, request, advice ...) with suitable verbs + to-infinitives

Answer: A

39. "Don't go on holiday yet," she told him.
A. She advised him don't go on holiday yet.
B. She advised him not go on holiday yet.
C. She advised him not to go on holiday yet.
D. She advised him go not to on holiday yet.

Clue: The negative form of 'to' is not to (NOT: in not/to don't/ don't to)

Answer: C

40. "Remember to post the letter," he asked me:
A. He reminded me posting the letter.
B. He reminded me to post the letter.
C. He reminded me for posting the letter.
D. He reminded me that I post the letter.

Answer: B

41. He said, "Never do that again."
A. He told us to do that again never.
B. He told us not to do never that again.
C. He told us never to do that again.
D. He told us that we never to do that again.

Clue: When we report a negative imperative, we put not or never before the to-infinitive, but we don't use never and not together.

Answer: C

42. She said, "When should I be at the station?"
A. She asked when she should be at the station
B. She asked when to be at the station.
C. She asked that when if she be at the station.
D. She asked when to be at the station?
E. A and B

Clue: This is how we report requests for advice with question words (when, where, how, what ...)

Direct request for advice: 'How shall I repair it?'

'How should I repair it?'

Reported with question-word + should:

- He wanted to know how he should repair it.
 - He wanted to know how to repair it.
- We can use a **to-infinitive** after all question words (how to, when to, what to, where to etc) except why.
- He wanted to know why he should wait.
- (NOT: He wanted to know why to wait)
63. "Shall I fax the information to..."

63. (NOT: He wanted to know why he should wait.
"Shall I fax the information to them?" she asked.
A. She asked if/ whether she should fax the information to them.
B. She asked whether to fax the information to them.
C. She asked that whether to fax the information to them.
D. A and B
Clue: This is how we use 'whether'.

Clue: This is how we report offers and suggestions with should or shouldn't.

- Direct offer or suggestion: 'Shall I phone her?'
'Should I phone her?'
- Reported with **if/whether**: He wanted to know **if/whether** he should phone her.
- Reported with **whether to**: He wanted to know **whether to** phone her. (NOT: 'if to').

64. What is the indirect speech equivalent of this sentence: "Is she lovely?"

- A. I remarked how lovely she was.
B. I exclaimed that she was lovely.
C. I asked if she wasn't lovely.
D. A and B

D. A and B
Clue: When we report a **strong emotion/feeling**, we use the reporting verbs **remarked**, **exclaimed** with **how** or **that**. 'A' is more natural in this case, but 'B' is also possible.
 Answer: D

65. He died two years ago.

This means:

- He died two years ago.
This means:
 A. When I got there, I found out he had died two years before.
 B. When I got here, I found out he died after two years.
 C. When I got there, I had found he died two years before.
- Answer: A

Review exercise

1. "I suppose you've heard the latest _____ news", she said
A. news," said she C. news", she said
B. news." She said D. news," she said
2. I notified _____ I had changed my address.
A. with the bank that C. that
B. the bank that D. to the bank that
3. She reassured me that she _____ the card.
A. had posted C. Posted
B. has posted D. posts
4. She _____ her holiday in Finland.
A. said me about C. said about
B. told about D. told me about
5. She encouraged _____ the job.
A. to take the job C. that Alemu should take
B. to Alemu to take D. Alemu to take
6. They directed that the building _____.
A. he pulled down
B. is to be pulled down
C. to be pulled down
D. should be pulled down
7. He asked me where he _____ put the box.
A. shall C. will
B. ought to D. should
8. Our teacher told _____ our books.
A. to open C. us to open
B. us open D. opening
9. The examiner invited _____ writing.
A. to start
B. that we start
C. us that we start
D. us to start
10. The ticket inspector requested _____ our tickets.
A. us that we should produce C. us produce
B. to produce D. that we produce
11. The student denied _____ in the exam.
A. to cheat C. us to cheat
B. us that he cheat D. cheating
12. My brother encouraged _____ more confident about my

chances.

13. Our teacher suggested _____ some vocabulary for homework.
 A. to be
 B. me to be
 C. me that I am
 D. that I am
14. John asked _____ on the geography he had just revised.
 A. me to test him
 B. to test him
 C. to revise
 D. us revising
15. The police prohibited _____ the building.
 A. the public from entering
 B. the public not to enter
 C. that the public enter
 D. entering
16. Jemila suggested _____ basketball the night before the exams started.
 A. to play
 B. us playing
 C. playing
 D. us to play
17. The thief forced _____ the keys.
 A. the car driver to give him
 B. the car driver giving him
 C. that the car driver to give him
 D. giving the car driver

II. Compete the reported sentence with the correct tenses

18. "I am tired." She said she _____ tired.
 19. "You play very well" He told me I _____ very well.
 20. "Can you help us?" They asked if I _____ help them.
 21. "We're leaving." They told us they _____
 22. "She hasn't brushed her hair." I noticed that she _____ her hair.
 23. "Kifle has had an accident" Yoseph rang to say that Kifle _____ and accident.
 24. "I left school at fifteen." Her letter said that she _____ school at fifteen.
 25. "Nobody will know." I thought nobody _____
 26. "This letter has been opened." I could see that the letter _____
- ## III. Turn these in to indirect questions, beginning 'I asked'
27. 'Where are my loves?' _____
 28. 'What is Elsa's address?' _____
 29. 'When is the new manager coming?' _____

30. 'How does she know my name?' _____
 31. 'Why are all the windows open?' _____
 32. 'How many books does he want?' _____
 33. 'Where do they keep the money?' _____
 34. 'What time is the meeting?' _____
 35. 'How does the photocopier work?' _____
 36. 'How often does Martha go shopping?' _____
- IV. Imagine these sentences 'were reported in another place a month later.'

Put in words and expression from the box

right way	that evening	that day
the same night	there the day	before there
that morning	the day after	the day before the day
after	the week before	

37. "I'll see you tomorrow." She said she'd see me _____
 38. "My brother's arriving here today." She said her brother was arriving _____
 39. "I'll phone you this evening." He said he would phone _____
 40. "Do you like it here?" She asked if I liked it _____
 41. "My uncle died last week." He told me his uncle had died _____
 42. "This meat tastes funny." She said _____ meat tasted funny.
 43. "I am leaving now." She told us she was leaving _____
 44. "I overslept this morning." She told him she's over slept _____
 45. "The train leaves at 5 tonight." I was told the train left at 5 _____
 46. "Kedir phoned me yesterday." He said Kedir had phoned him _____
- ## V. Change the sentences as shown.
47. 'I won't tell anybody' (He promised) _____
 48. 'I'll cook supper.' (She offered) _____
 49. 'Leave early.' (He advised me) _____
 50. 'Please don't close the door.' (She asked me) _____
 51. 'I'll stop smoking.' (She promised) _____
 52. 'Why don't I do the shopping?' (He offered) _____

53. 'you ought to tell the police' (she advised me)
 54. 'wait outside' (I told her)
 55. 'Ok, I'll pay half' (He agreed)
 56. 'Don't park outside the house.' (she told me)
 57. 'We'll pay for the tickets?' (we offered)

Answer key

- I. Choice
- | | | | |
|----------|--------|--------|-------|
| 1. D | 2. B | 3. B/c | 4. D |
| 6. A/C/D | 7. B/D | 8. C | 9. D |
| 11. D | 12. B | 13. A | 14. A |
| 16. B | 17. A | | |
- II. 18. Was 23. had had
 19. played 24. had left
 20. could 25. would know
 21. were leaving 26. had been opened
 22. hadn't brushed
- III. 27. I asked where my gloves were,
 28. I asked what Elsa's address was,
 29. I asked when the new manager was coming.
 30. I asked how she knew my name.
 31. I asked why all the windows were open.
 32. I asked how many books he wanted.
 33. I asked where they kept the money.
 34. I asked what time the meeting was.
 35. I asked how the photocopier worked.
 36. I asked how often Martha went shopping.
- II. 37. The day after 42. the
 38. that day 43. right away
 39. that evening 44. that morning
 40. there 45. the same night
 41. the week before 46. the day before
- III. 47. He promised not to tell anybody.
 48. She offered to cook supper.
 49. He advised me to leave early.
 50. She asked me not to close the door.
 51. She promised to stop smoking.
 52. He offered to do the shopping.
 53. She advised me to tell the police.

54. I told her to wait outside.
 55. The agreed to pay half.
 56. She told me not to park outside the house.
 57. We offered to pay for the tickets.